

RICDOR

Ortiz



Achievers

Margie Lemmens

B2



Richmond

Contents

STARTER A page 4

STARTER B page 6

UNIT 1 Brain power	page 8
---------------------------	--------

UNIT 2 Adventurers	page 18
---------------------------	---------

UNIT 3 Here and there, then and now	page 28
--	---------

REVIEW UNITS 1–3 page 38

VIDEO page 39

UNIT 4 Who's watching you?	page 40
-----------------------------------	---------

UNIT 5 Mirror, mirror	page 50
------------------------------	---------

UNIT 6 Techno-victims!	page 60
-------------------------------	---------

REVIEW UNITS 4–6 page 70

VIDEO page 71

UNIT 7 Crocodile man	page 72
-----------------------------	---------

UNIT 8 Getting away	page 82
----------------------------	---------

UNIT 9 Going for gold	page 92
------------------------------	---------

REVIEW UNITS 7–9 page 102

VIDEO page 103

REVIEW UNITS 1–9 page 104–112

WRITING REFERENCE page 113–121

PREPARE FOR CAMBRIDGE EXAMS

AND THE TOEFL JUNIOR® TEST page 122–139

VOCABULARY BANK page 140–143

STORIES page 144

IRREGULAR VERBS LIST page 145

 For audio, go to richmondelt.com/achievers/studentaudio

VOCABULARY

Materials

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

cardboard china concrete cork metal

- Precious _____ like gold is used in jewellery.
- When we moved house, we packed all our belongings in _____ boxes.
- _____ is a natural material that is used to seal wine bottles, but also has many other uses.
- Most large-scale building projects such as dams, tunnels or bridges would be impossible without _____.
- _____ is a ceramic material made by heating clay in a special oven, called a kiln.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct materials.

- We went hiking in the Alps and slept in a traditional cabin, entirely made of w _____.
- C _____ clothes are light and comfortable, which is why people like to wear them in summer.
- R _____ is used to make car and bicycle tyres.
- Thanks to interactive whiteboards, very few teachers have to write with c _____ these days.
- Michelangelo sculpted his masterpiece *David* from one solid block of m _____.

3 Match sentences 1–5 to the correct endings a–e.

- The Taj Mahal is built of marble, inlaid with ...
 - Many skyscrapers have ...
 - The Great Pyramid of Giza was built with approximately ...
 - The 8,000 warriors of China's spectacular Terracotta Army were made of ...
 - The façades of many of Gaudi's buildings are covered in ...
- a 2.3 million limestone blocks.
b reddish clay which was then painted.
c a steel framework and glass walls.
d colourful ceramic tiles.
e many semi-precious stones.

Do You REMEMBER? Homes and other buildings

4 Circle the word that is different and explain why.

- cathedral / temple / palace / mosque

- hotel / hostel / tent / B & B

- farmhouse / ranch / block of flats / cabin

- castle / church / museum / mall

VOCABULARY

Activities

5 Circle the correct option.

- This year I'm planning ... on holiday.
A getting active B to get action C to get active
- I've already ... for horse-riding lessons.
A taken up B signed up C signed on
- I'm also ... to try windsurfing.
A keen B interested C fanatical
- I found out there's a school ... beginners' lessons not far from here.
A managing B running C training
- And if I have time, I'll ... on my French as well!
A study B improve C brush up

6 Complete the email with the correct words from the box.

for get how joined taken up up to

Great to hear what you're ¹ _____ this summer! I'm pretty busy myself. I've finally ² _____ the local gym and I'm going ³ _____ long walks in the countryside too. I've always wanted to ⁴ _____ to know the local wildlife better. Finally, I've ⁵ _____ cooking because I want to learn ⁶ _____ to make healthy food.

7 Complete the text with prepositions from the box. There is one extra one you don't need to use.

on in for on along in

When my family and I go ¹ _____ holiday, we all like different things. I love lying ² _____ the beach and sunbathing. My parents prefer to walk ³ _____ the beach, just looking at the waves. My sister's doing a course ⁴ _____ painting. My brother's always running around; he's training ⁵ _____ a marathon.

Do You REMEMBER? Holidays

8 Circle the correct words.

If you like action and variety, Indonesia is the perfect ¹ **destiny / destination**. You can go sightseeing in the crowded capital, Jakarta, and hunt for bargains in the ² **bustling / breathtaking** street markets. Or, you can ³ **set off / head to** one of many natural parks that offer a wide range of exciting activities: climb a volcano and enjoy ⁴ **iconic / panoramic** views from the top, chill out on ⁵ **exotic / lively** sandy beaches, learn to scuba dive and marvel at the ⁶ **spectacular / delicious** underwater scenery.

GRAMMAR

Present Tense Review

- 9 Complete the dialogue with the present simple or the present continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Claire: Hi Anna. ¹ _____ you _____
(want) to meet up later?

Anna: I'd love to, but I can't. I ² _____ (study) for
my exams next week.

Claire: But it's Saturday! ³ _____ you
_____ (not go out) tonight?

Anna: Tonight ⁴ _____ (be) impossible. But how
about next weekend?

Claire: Sorry, Ben and I ⁵ _____ (fly) to Paris on
Friday for a city break.

- 10 Write questions in the present simple or the present continuous. Use the words in brackets.

1 A: What _____ for lunch
today? (you / have)

B: My mum made me some ham and cheese sandwiches.

2 A: What _____? (parents / do)

B: My dad's a teacher and my mum's an accountant.

3 A: _____ to go out or stay in
tonight? (you / want)

B: I'd rather stay in; I'm a bit tired.

4 A: _____ at the moment? (Luke / work)

B: I'm not sure, but I know he had an interview last week.

5 A: How _____? (cooking course / go)

B: It's really good. I'm learning loads!

- 11 Complete the sentences with the present simple or present continuous of the verbs in the box.

manage not agree not bother spend stare

1 I don't mind the rain. It _____ me.

2 My brother and I _____ about anything.

3 How _____ you _____ to study with
all that noise?

4 My sister often _____ the weekend at her best
friend's house.

5 Do you know that guy who _____ at you?

- 12 Correct the errors in the sentences.

1 I think of joining a running club; I want to get fit.

2 The alarm is going off when you press a button.

3 Julie wears an incredibly smart dress today.

4 Look at that! It snows outside.

DO YOU REMEMBER? Historic present

- 13 Complete the newspaper headlines with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

hit cut off sweep away blow away scare away

1 Freak wave _____ cliff walkers.

2 Floods _____ entire villages in the interior.

3 Storm _____ church roof.

4 Weather conditions _____ visitors.

5 Tornado _____ the coast of Cuba.

- 14 Read this extract from a book review of *The Book Thief*. Rewrite the verbs in italics in the historic present.

At the start of the novel, we ¹ found _____
Liesel, her mother and little brother Werner on a
train. Liesel's mother ² was taking _____
the children to live with foster parents, to keep them
safe. Tragically, Werner ³ died _____
on the train and Liesel ⁴ had to _____
attend his burial in a cold, snowy graveyard. There, she ⁵ stole
_____ *The Grave Digger's Handbook* which ⁶ had
fallen _____ from a grave-digger's coat. It ⁷ became
_____ her first ever book and treasure, even though
she ⁸ couldn't read _____.



CHECK

- 15 Complete the article with the words in the box.

guided tour heritage historic magnificent
marble porcelain spectacular vast
wooden world famous

Historic Home Attracts Many Visitors



¹ _____ Blenheim
Palace is one of Britain's great

² _____ homes and ³ _____
for being the birthplace of Sir Winston Churchill.

The Palace is considered a masterpiece of Baroque
architecture and every year thousands of visitors join
a free ⁴ _____ of its ⁵ _____
collection of furniture, portraits and tapestries.

Highlights include the splendid ⁶ _____
doors that lead into the Great Hall, the beautiful
⁷ _____ displays in the China Ante Room
and the Long Library – a ⁸ _____ room full
of valuable books and ⁹ _____ statues.

The Palace has been a World ¹⁰ _____ Site
since 1984.

VOCABULARY

Multi-part verbs (1)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct multi-part verb.

- When climbing the pyramid, Cleo held on / brushed up on to the railing because she was afraid of falling.
- My cousin is looking for a job; he spends hours on the Internet brushing up on / checking out job advertisements.
- The last time we checked out / ate out was probably a month ago. We went to an Argentinian restaurant.
- My parents are taking me sightseeing in Italy in the Easter holidays, so I should give away / brush up on my Italian.
- He gave away / held on all his possessions to a charity and left for India.

2 Replace the underlined verbs with the correct form of the multi-part verbs in the box.

carry on give up grow up save up take up

- Audrey continued working until she finished the project.
- I'm thinking of leaving my weekend job.
- Children are often asked what they want to be when they become adults.
- My mum started doing Pilates two months ago.
- I'm putting some money in the bank every month to go Inter-railing with my friends this summer.

3 Which words do not go with the multi-part verb?

- Call out: someone's name / a warning / a scream / for help
- Check in: your luggage / on-line / your email / to a hotel
- Calm down: a disaster / a crying infant / a nervous animal / an angry parent
- Give up: smoking / chocolate / your seat / your glasses
- Check out: the prices / a website / an exam / of your room

Do you REMEMBER? Multi-part verbs (2)

4 Complete the sentences with prepositions from the box.

off on out up with

- I'm terrified of the dentist, so I always put _____ going.
- After his wife's death, he brought _____ his three daughters alone.
- Tony's parents were furious when they found _____ he had failed all his exams.
- Excuse me, could I try these jeans _____?
- As a tour guide, I have to deal _____ all kinds of people.

VOCABULARY

Mind verbs

5 Circle the correct verb.

- My dad reminded / remembered me that I had a doctor's appointment.
- We're going on holiday to Cuba; just imagine / guess, I'll be lying under a palm tree sipping exotic cocktails.
- I'm sorry; I don't understand / know this math problem. Could you explain it again, please?
- I don't feel / believe he's telling the truth.
- My sister was on holiday in France when she realized / learnt she had won the prize.

6 Complete the definitions with the correct mind verbs.

- When you're far away from your family and friends you m _____ them.
- When you see or hear a person and know who they are, you r _____ them.
- When you are concerned about something, you w _____ about it.
- When you ask yourself questions about a situation and try to work out what to do, you w _____ about it.
- When you don't remember something, you f _____ it.

7 Complete the text with the words in the box.

believe decided realized recognize remembered understand

My uncle had always wanted to learn another language, so he ¹ _____ to do a course in German. When he got to his first class, he couldn't ² _____ how difficult it was. He didn't ³ _____ a word the teacher was saying and he couldn't ⁴ _____ any of the words in his book. He tried to study at home, but he never ⁵ _____ any of the vocabulary they'd seen in class. Soon, he ⁶ _____ that German was not for him and gave up!

Do you REMEMBER? Nouns and verbs

8 Complete the sentence with the correct noun form of the verb in brackets.

- He has a wide _____ of history and politics. (know)
- Choosing what to study at university is a very important _____. (decide)
- If you want to be a good writer, you have to use your _____. (imagine)
- Some people find it easy to learn new things because they have a good _____. (remember)
- I'm sorry; I didn't want to hurt your _____. (feel)

GRAMMAR

Comparatives and superlatives

9 Complete the description with the words in the box.

than as from to much in

I'm quite similar¹ _____ my twin sister; we both have brown hair and green eyes. The difference is that I'm a bit slimmer² _____ her, though not quite³ _____ tall. The two of us are very different⁴ _____ our elder brother. His hair is⁵ _____ lighter and his eyes are darker than ours, and he's definitely the funniest person⁶ _____ the family!

10 Rewrite the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.

soft weak thick light common

- Roses aren't as rare as orchids.

- Rubies aren't as hard as diamonds.

- Glass isn't as strong as concrete.

- A woolen sweater isn't as thin as a silk shirt.

- Titanium isn't as heavy as steel.

11 Write comparative sentences about the facts below. Use the words in brackets.

- The Sahara (9,400,000 km²) is the third largest desert in the world; the fifth largest is the Gobi (1,300,000 km²). (much / small)

- In 2009, the average price for silver was \$432 per kg, while the average price for gold was \$30,645 per kg. (a lot / expensive)

- The height of the Torre Caja Madrid is 250 m, whereas that of the Torre de Cristal is 249 m. (a bit / tall)

- The Chinese city of Urumqi is about 2,500 km from the sea; the British city of Birmingham is between 110 and 130 km from the sea. (a lot / far)

- An African elephant weighs around 7,000 kg; a rhino can weigh over 3,000 kg. (much / heavy)

Do you REMEMBER? Adverbs

12 Circle the correct words.

- My father works very *hardly* / *hard*.
- She was *wrong* / *wrongly* accused of the crime.
- Ladies and gentlemen, we will *shortly* / *short* be landing at Gatwick airport.
- He always drives too *fastly* / *fast*.
- Eco-friendly products are much more *widely* / *wide* available than before.
- My brother plays the guitar very *well* / *good*.

13 Rewrite the sentences with the adverb or adverbial phrase of the word in brackets.

- The weather has been very bad. (late)

- The teacher smiled at me when she gave back my exam. (friendly)

- I had kept the receipt of the dress. (lucky)

- The flight attendant repeated the safety instructions. (bored)

- American sitcoms like *Friends* are still popular with audiences all over the world. (huge)

CHECK

14 Complete the text with the words in the box.

absolutely checked out decided
fortunately held on incredibly
imagined saving up scary wondering

My boyfriend's birthday was coming up and I was ¹ _____ what to get him. As he loves architecture, I ² _____ to take him up the Shard, the 306 m glass pyramid next to London Bridge, which is the tallest building in Western Europe. I went online, ³ _____ the prices and started ⁴ _____ for the excursion. When the big day arrived, we stepped into a lift which zipped us up to the 68th floor ⁵ _____ quickly. ⁶ _____, it wasn't as ⁷ _____ as I had ⁸ _____. When we got to the viewing platform, I ⁹ _____ to the telescopes to steady myself. My boyfriend was ¹⁰ _____ ecstatic and the views were amazing!



1 Brain power

READING

1 Read the text quickly. What type of text is it?

- A a story
- B an article
- C a review
- D a report

What a nightmare!



Picture this: you are late for an important exam, but the street is covered in ice and you keep slipping over. Or imagine your plane is leaving in an hour, but you can't find your passport. Your hands are sweating and your heart is pounding when, suddenly, you wake up and realize it was only a nightmare!

Everybody has dreams, but what exactly are they? While our body lies mostly still when we are sleeping, our brain remains active. During the night, we go through different sleep stages including Rapid Eye Movement (REM). In this stage, our eyes shoot around under our eyelids in response to motor signals from the brain, indicating activity in the form of dreams.

Scientists believe these dream images originate in the segment of the brain responsible for memory, awareness, consciousness and thought. Although the part of our brain that takes in new images is asleep, the part that interprets previously stored images is wide-awake. In other words, while we are asleep, our brain is busy making sense of all the impressions and experiences we gathered during the day.

So why do our dreams sometimes turn into nightmares? There are many different explanations, the most common ones being stress and trauma. Pressure at work or school, money worries or traumatic events can all bring on nightmares. Other factors include illness, taking medication or eating and drinking too much.

Is there anything we can do to prevent them? Establishing a healthy sleep routine with regular bed times, not doing exercise late at night, eating light dinners and cutting down on coffee, alcohol and other stimulants can certainly make a difference.

As a last resort, psychologists suggest that describing, drawing or even rewriting nightmares in a journal can help us understand and control the working of our brain better.

2 Read the text again and circle T (true) or F (false). Rewrite the false sentences so they are true.

- 1 Your heart tends to beat more slowly during a nightmare. T / F
- 2 During the night our body shuts down, but our mind keeps working. T / F
- 3 While we sleep, our brain interprets information from the day. T / F
- 4 Nightmares are mainly caused by physical problems. T / F
- 5 Relating your nightmares can help you overcome them. T / F
- 6 The article claims that nightmares are inevitable. T / F

3 Choose the correct answer. According to the author:

- A nightmares are frightening and should be taken seriously.
- B nightmares are the result of a mixture of mental and physical processes.
- C nightmares can easily be prevented.

WORD ZONE

EXTRA

More expressions with *make* and *do*

4 Put the words in the correct column to form collocations. You can find some of them in the text.

a mess sense mistakes some reading
an exam progress a fool of yourself
exercise a difference a favour

Make	Do

5 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Do you ever have nightmares and what are they about?
- 2 Which do you think is the best tip for dealing with nightmares and why?

VOCABULARY

Using the brain

- 6 Complete the sentences with words in the box. There are three extra words you do not need to use.

brain deadline drain long-term memory
passed process short-term strategy

- If you hand in your essay too late, you miss the _____.
 - Peter never thinks about the future – he only makes _____ plans.
 - Steve only has to read a page once to retain all the information. He's got a photographic _____.
 - I felt so relieved when I _____ the exam. I hadn't expected it!
 - Recycling your notes regularly is the best learning _____.
 - The phenomenon of talented people leaving their home country to go and work abroad is called brain _____.
- 7 Write your own sentences with the three words from exercise 1 which you did not use.

- _____
- _____
- _____

- 8 Look at these sentences that contain a form of the word *learn*. What part of speech (noun, adjective, etc.) is it in each sentence?

- Professor Marley was a man of great learning.

- This is a useful dictionary for learners of English.

- Some learned people are actually autodidacts.

- The expert spoke learnedly about his specialization for an hour.

- 9 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word *memory*.

- I have some great _____ of my trip to Cuba.
- It was a very _____ occasion when our team won the league.
- Experts say we can only _____ about 10–12 new words a day.
- There is an impressive war _____ on top of the hill.

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to learning

- 10 Put the headings *Auditory*, *Tactile* and *Visual* in the correct places in the text.

Learning styles

Not everybody learns in the same way. Different learners prefer different learning styles. According to experts, these can be divided into three main types:

A _____

These students like to receive spoken information in the form of lectures, discussions, audio recordings or podcasts. When studying, they like to read aloud and record themselves.

B _____

These students prefer to see information presented in books, articles, web pages, images or videos. They like teachers to use PowerPoint presentations or white boards. They tend to take lots of notes, use highlighters and prepare charts as study-aids.

C _____

These students prefer information that is transmitted in a 'hands-on', practical way, such as in laboratories, workshops or participatory classes. They like to touch, hold and manipulate the subject matter.



- 11 Match the descriptions to the appropriate learning style in the text.

These students ...

- enjoy **finding out** information by doing experiments. _____
- prefer to **revise** by re-reading their notes. _____
- study** by reading aloud and repeating. _____
- absorb** information best when it's presented in drawings. _____
- like to **brush up** on their language skills by listening to CDs. _____
- easily **pick up** new words they have heard in conversations. _____

- 12 Match the words in bold from exercise 11 to the definitions.

- refresh or improve your knowledge _____
- try and learn _____
- acquire knowledge in an informal way _____
- fully understand what you have learnt _____
- discover _____
- study again before an exam _____

- 13 What type of learner are you? How do you know?

GRAMMAR

Modal verb review

1 Circle the most suitable words.

- 1 You **can't** / **shouldn't** smoke in public buildings.
- 2 In our school we **have to** / **ought to** wear a uniform.
- 3 I **should** / **need to** leave a little earlier today. I have a dental appointment.
- 4 You **can** / **have to** travel by train or by bus.
- 5 You **don't have to** / **mustn't** shout! My little brother's asleep.
- 6 If you want to lose weight, you **can** / **should** do more exercise.

2 Match the sentences from exercise 1 to functions A–E.

- A obligation _____
 B necessity _____
 C recommendation _____
 D prohibition _____ / _____
 E possibility _____

3 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

- 1 After school I often have to _____.
- 2 In class we can _____, but we can't _____.
- 3 At weekends I don't have to _____.
- 4 If I want to improve my English, I should _____.
- 5 If I don't want to make my parents angry, I mustn't _____.

4 Rewrite the sentences so they have a similar meaning. Use **can** / **should** / **need to** / **have to** / **must** / **ought to**, in the affirmative or negative.

- 1 It's a bad idea to go out late the night before an exam.
You _____.
- 2 It's not necessary for us to wear a uniform.
We _____.
- 3 It's obligatory for bikers to put on a helmet.
Bikers _____.
- 4 If you are under 18, you are not allowed to drive.
If you are under 18, you _____.
- 5 I advise you to learn some Japanese before you go there on holiday.
You _____.
- 6 It's optional for students to choose a second language.
Students _____.

5 Complete the advert with appropriate modal verbs. The verbs can be affirmative (+) or negative (-).

Would you like to improve your English in a fun way?

Then join our language exchange programme!



All members ¹ _____ (+) participate in weekly activities such as discussions, debates or conversations. For other activities, such as film nights or monthly book clubs, you ² _____ (+) sign up in advance. To register, you ³ _____ (+) fill in an application form online and pay a fee of 20 euros. You ⁴ _____ (-) attach a photo. During activities, participants ⁵ _____ (-) speak anything but English. If you want to make the most out of your membership, we recommend that you ⁶ _____ (+) attend at least two activities a month. Don't worry if you ⁷ _____ (-) speak English fluently yet – we have members of all levels.

If you're interested, you ⁸ _____ (+) come to an introductory meeting on Thursday 15 May. You ⁹ _____ (-) register beforehand.

6 Look at these extracts from emails that students wrote to an online student magazine. What advice would you give them?

I'm a 16 year-old-boy and I frequently suffer from nightmares. As a result, I feel exhausted the next day and I can't pay attention in class. Is there anything I can do to stop this?

Reply: First of all, you shouldn't _____.

I've just failed an important exam again! As it is, I study five hours a day and most of the weekend. I only take a break to play football with my friends. Do you think I should give it up?

Reply: Nobody can study all day, so you needn't _____.

I'm hopeless at Languages! I don't understand grammar and I can't stand reading. What can I do to improve?

Reply: If you don't like reading, you can also _____.

I think I must have a really bad memory. No matter how often I read a text, I don't seem to remember anything. How can I improve?

Reply: If reading doesn't work for you, you should _____.

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to five people talking about their method of studying. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 quit
- 2 yawn
- 3 soak
- 4 drawback
- 5 lap
- 6 stroke
- 7 odd
- 8 stuffy

- A disadvantage
- B unusual or strange
- C stop doing something
- D surface created at the top of your legs when you are sitting
- E open your mouth wide, usually because you are tired
- F move your hand gently over something
- G oppressive, difficult to breathe in
- H lie in the water for a period of time

- 2 Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 Who advised Charlie to change her habits?

- 2 What does Mohammed need?

- 3 Where does Lily study?

- 4 What is Daniel's problem?

- 5 What does Karla like doing when she's studying?

- 3 Listen again and match the five speakers to statements A–F. There is one extra letter you do not need to use.

- 1 Charlie
- 2 Mohammed
- 3 Lily
- 4 Daniel
- 5 Karla

- A I'm not disturbed by noise.
- B My parents' gift helped me focus on my studies.
- C My new study routine is not as much fun as my previous one.
- D It's a great way to remember things.
- E My mother made me change the way I studied.
- F Coffee doesn't have any effect on me.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What has Charlie given up doing?

- 2 How does Mohammed try to stay awake?

- 3 What's a disadvantage of Lily's way of studying?

- 4 Who is Misty?

- 5 How does Daniel manage to relax?

- 6 Why does Karla hate studying in the library?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 It sometimes gets pretty boring.

- 2 I used to drive my parents mad.

- 3 Music in the background doesn't bother me.

READING

- 1 Look at the examples of languages in the extract. Do you know which films they come from? Match the languages to the sample sentences and the translations.

Do you speak Klingon ... or Na'vi?



Language	Sentence	Translation
Klingon	Pedig edhellen?	What's happening?
Na'vi	qaStaH nuq?	Do you speak Elvish?
Elvish	Yer zheanae	Welcome
Dothraki	Zola'u niprte'	You're (very) beautiful.

Did you recognize any of the sentences? ¹ _____

_____ . The latter are epic stories set in an imaginary world, inhabited by non-human races, such as elves and dwarves, and magical creatures like dragons and monsters. Or you might be a keen linguist with a special interest in conlangs, which is short for constructed languages. These are fictional languages created by academics and aficionados with a special purpose, often a book or film, in mind.

In the 1970s, in the wake of the first successful moon landing, an ever-increasing number of science fiction films started appearing in the cinema. To give credence to the fictional worlds they were creating, film-makers thought that the creatures populating them should have their own languages.

² _____ . Klingon, the language of the humanoid warriors and arch-enemies of the USS Enterprise in *Star Trek*, was the first Hollywood conlang to attain world fame. Created by American linguist Marc Okrand, Klingon became a cult language, though not many fans speak it fluently.

The release of *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy, based on the works of J.R.R. Tolkien, was a new height in the creation of epic fantasy films and a boost to the popularity of conlangs.

³ _____ .

For him, these invented languages were vital to the extent that he made up his stories to provide a setting for them, rather than vice versa.

⁴ _____ .

When James Cameron's film *Avatar* premiered in 2009, it was praised by critics for its outstanding visual effects and became an instant box office hit. Moreover, it put the film's protagonists, the Na'vi, the three-metre tall, blue-striped, indigenous inhabitants of the moon Pandora, into the spotlight. ⁵ _____

_____ . After the film's release, Cameron continued expanding Na'vi vocabulary and the language has attracted a considerable following and an increasing community of learners.

You may wonder why serious academics create fictional languages and why fans bother to learn languages that aren't used in real life. ⁶ _____

As you feel more motivated, the learning process becomes easier. Moreover, learning a constructed language also helps your understanding of other languages, how they are structured and the way words are built. Besides, you can fine-tune your listening skills and improve your pronunciation by learning new sounds. Lastly, speaking another language enables you to think in a different way and broadens your mind. So, why not take up Elvish?

GLOSSARY

aficionado	enthusiast, fan
in the wake of	a phenomenon that is the direct result or consequence of another
boost	encouragement, increase, or promotion
upsurge	a rise or increase
bother	make the effort or take the trouble to do something
fine-tune	make small changes in order to improve something

2 Read the text quickly and choose the best summary.

- A Conlangs are especially created for sci-fi and fantasy movies, although they aren't used anywhere else.
- B The popularity of conlangs is closely linked to sci-fi and fantasy movies and they attract a following of linguists and non-specialists.
- C Conlangs are created by linguists who believe that they can help improve language learning skills.

3 Read the text again and complete the gaps with sentences A–G. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use.

- A The success of *The Lord of the Rings* led to an upsurge in the popularity of the genre.
- B After all, audiences could not be expected to believe that everyone in the galaxy spoke English.
- C Tolkien, a philologist specialized in ancient Germanic languages, was the creator of various constructed languages, such as the Elvish languages spoken in Middle-earth.
- D If you did, you're probably a great fan of sci-fi or high fantasy films.
- E In fact, Tolkien was so fluent in Elvish that he wrote several poems and essays in the language.
- F However, evidence suggests that studying a language for your own enjoyment has several benefits.
- G Their eponymous language was developed by Paul Frommer, an American doctor in linguistics.

4 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 In paragraph 1, what do we learn about conlangs?
 - A They are all created by linguists and academics.
 - B They can be developed especially for works of fiction.
 - C They are usually spoken by dragons and monsters.
- 2 Why did film-makers become interested in conlangs?
 - A They wanted to make their films more authentic.
 - B They didn't think that aliens could speak English.
 - C Audiences had expressed an interest in them.
- 3 In paragraph 4, what is said about the Na'vi language?
 - A It's spoken by people due to its easy vocabulary.
 - B It was largely held responsible for *Avatar*'s success.
 - C Its development didn't stop upon the film's completion.
- 4 Which advantage of learning a constructed language is mentioned in paragraph 5?
 - A Most conlangs have similar grammatical structures to normal languages.
 - B Speaking a conlang allows you to communicate with other high fantasy fans.
 - C Studying a language you're really into facilitates the understanding of others.

VOCABULARY

Adjectives from verbs:
-ing, -ed

5 Circle the correct words to complete the questions. Then write answers about you.

- 1 Who is the most **annoying** / **annoyed** person you know and why?

- 2 When was the last time you felt **depressing** / **depressed** and why?

- 3 Do you think studying is **tiring** / **tired**?

- 4 When were you last **moving** / **moved** by a film?

- 5 What is the most **uplifting** / **uplifted** song you know?

6 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective form of the words in brackets.

- 1 The view over the mountains was really _____ (impress).
- 2 Cockroaches are the most _____ (repulse) animals I know.
- 3 Doing exams can be really _____ (stress).

7 Look back at **Verb Zone** in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 1.

8 Rewrite the sentences with multi-part verbs from exercise 7.

- 1 Go on the internet and search for the time the last train leaves.
Go on the internet _____.
- 2 In the final class, I'll give you back the exams and show you your mistakes.
In the final class, I'll give you back the exams and _____.
- 3 My cousin doesn't earn much, but he has enough to live on.
My cousin doesn't earn much, but he has enough _____.
- 4 Our French teacher kept writing more and more words on the board, until we couldn't fully understand them any more.
Our French teacher kept writing more and more words on the board, until we couldn't _____.
- 5 We need to consider all options carefully before buying a house. It's a very important decision.
We need to _____.



1 Circle the correct form of the verbs to complete the dialogue.

Nils: How's your dad feeling these days, Claire?

Claire: Much better, thanks. For a start, he's stopped ¹ **to smoke / smoking**. And he's also managing ² **drinking / to drink** less coffee. He used to ³ **have / having** at least six cups a day, but now he's down to two.

Nils: That's good. And what about your sister Maya? Wasn't she worried about ⁴ **losing / to lose** her job?

Claire: Yes, she was and unfortunately she did. She's having a bit of a break at the moment, but she needs ⁵ **to start / starting** looking for a new job pretty soon. She can't afford ⁶ **staying / to stay** at home doing nothing for long.

Nils: Would you like me ⁷ **having / to have** a word with my boss? She mentioned the possibility of hiring someone else.

Claire: I'm sure Maya would love ⁸ **to work / working** at your school. I'll tell her ⁹ **getting / to get** in touch with you.

2 Use the words to write questions, making the necessary changes.

1 Which tasks / around the house / you / avoid / do?

2 What / you / look forward to / at the moment?

3 What kind of things / your parents / encourage / you / do?

4 What kind of things / your parents / warn / you / not / do?

5 What / be / the most difficult thing / you / manage / achieve / in life so far?

6 you / plan / continue / study English / next year?

3 Answer the questions in exercise 2 with your own opinions.

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____

4 Tick the correct sentences and change the ones that are incorrect.

- 1 When I first came to the UK, I wasn't used to drive on the left.
- 2 I'm looking forward to go on holiday next month.
- 3 The thieves pretended to be security guards in order to get into the building.
- 4 I want that my friends celebrate my birthday with me.
- 5 When he was a child, my younger brother didn't use to eat vegetables, but now he does.
- 6 I would prefer taking oral exams, rather than written ones.
- 7 I'm pleased meeting you.

5 Complete the sentences with your own ideas. Use a gerund or to + infinitive each time.

- 1 When I was younger, I really wanted _____.
- 2 The teacher allowed us _____.
- 3 My brother / sister apologized for _____.
- 4 When my grandfather was young, he used to _____.
- 5 I enjoy _____, but I can't stand _____.
- 6 I can never get used to _____.
- 7 I'm quite good at _____, but hopeless at _____.
- 8 Our coach forced us _____.

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Read the text and answer the questions. Circle True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Simonides spent a long time developing his method. T / F
- 2 The nobleman thought his poem was very bad. T / F
- 3 Simonides was saved by Castor and Pollux. T / F
- 4 The loci method associates numbers and words. T / F

The origin of memory training

The Greek poet Simonides, who lived some 2,500 years ago, is known as 'The Father of Memory Training'.

Simonides stumbled upon his method, which is called *loci* (the Latin word for places), after he was involved in a tragic accident. He had been invited to a banquet, to recite a poem in honour of the host, a nobleman from Thessaly. Simonides praised the host, but also dedicated part of his poem to the twin gods Castor and Pollux. The angry nobleman told him he would only pay half the agreed fee, and suggested that he should get the rest from those two gods he was so fond of. Shortly after that, Simonides was called outside, where two men were supposed to be waiting

for him. He stepped out, but couldn't find anyone.

He had only just left the hall when the roof collapsed, killing everyone inside. The bodies were crushed so badly that it was impossible to recognize them. It was then that Simonides realized that he could remember where all the guests had been sitting. And so, on the basis of Simonides' visual map, they were able to identify the victims.

After the incident, Simonides started reflecting on what had happened and he understood that if he associated names, words or numbers with a specific place, he would be able to remember them more easily. In this way, the method of loci was born.



Can you draw a plan of your classroom from memory with all your classmates in the right places?

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 How much does the average adult human brain weigh?

- 2 What are the English names of the four suits in a standard pack of playing cards?

- 3 Which pop star born in Minneapolis, USA, had epilepsy as a child?

- 4 If you are *quadrilingual*, how many languages can you speak?

- 5 What adjective is often used to describe an *earworm*?

- 6 How short is the human short-term memory: seconds, minutes or hours?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think Greg is going to say? (Clue: Where is Ipanema beach?)



INTERACTION

Succeeding in an interview

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- 1 when you receive some good news?
- 2 when you want someone to give you more information?
- 3 when you completely agree with someone else?



- 2 Diana has applied for a grant to do a summer course in France. Complete the interview with the Principal of her school, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

that's exactly what I think Can you tell me more about that
Well, I guess I am a little shy I'm so pleased to hear that
What can I say That sounds very interesting
Do you want to elaborate on that That's right
Yes, you could say that

Principal: Ah Diana, good morning. Do come in and sit down.

Diana: Good morning Ms Jones.

Principal: So, your French teacher tells me that you'd like to go to Dijon this summer.

Diana: ¹_____. I'm really into French but, although I did myself justice in the written exams, I think I need to improve my oral skills.

Principal: Hmm, ²_____. I can see here that your written exam results were excellent, but your oral exam was a little ... disappointing. I wonder why.

Diana: ³_____. I can't speak freely and I'm also worried about my pronunciation. That's why I think it would be really useful to go to France.

Principal: Yes, ⁴_____. Your teacher also mentioned that you write stories. Tell me more about that.

Diana: ⁵_____. I've always loved literature, especially Austen and Dickens, but for the moment I prefer to keep my own stories short – at least until I get more practice.

Principal: ⁷_____. Your teacher also said that you were thinking of studying French at college. ⁸_____?

Diana: Well, I definitely want to study something related to language, but I haven't decided yet. Perhaps a combined degree in Modern Languages?

Principal: Marvellous. I'm sure you'll do very well. Now, as for this place on the French course ... we have decided to accept your application. Our school is over the moon to have such an outstanding candidate.

Diana: Thank you so much Ms Jones!
⁹_____!

- 3 Find expressions in the dialogue that mean:

- 1 to do something to the best of your knowledge and ability
- 2 to be successful at what you do
- 3 to really like something
- 4 to be very pleased

- 4 Match the sentences to the expressions.

- 1 I think this article is really boring.
 - 2 You shouldn't have told Jen her hair looked better before. She was so pleased with her new cut.
 - 3 We've been discussing this for hours. We really need to take a decision now.
 - 4 Have you heard? Paul's failed his driving test again!
 - 5 I don't know how Jason can write his essays so fast.
 - 6 I think all exams should be scrapped.
- A I'm not sure I'm with you a hundred per cent. I think we need some tests to check our progress.
B I'm totally with you on that. We need to get down to business.
C You're absolutely right. I think we need to jazz it up a bit.
D Yeah, he just churns them out by the dozen, without any problems.
E Oh dear! Have I put my foot in it again?
F What a shame!

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the *Express Yourself* box on page 16 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

A report

WRITING SKILL

Making a formal recommendation



1 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 One recommendation / suggestion would be ...
A asking individual students about their preference.
B to ask individual students about their preference.
C ask individual students about their preference.
- 2 We suggest / recommend ...
A students should using a variety of techniques.
B students to use a variety of techniques.
C that students use a variety of techniques.
- 3 We suggest / recommend ...
A adapting techniques to students.
B to adapt techniques to students.
C you to adapt techniques to students.

2 Complete the report with the headings. There is one extra heading you do not need to use.

Storytelling	Future uses	Mind games
Mnemonics	Visual imagery	Improving memory

1

The objective of this report is to provide information about the memory training experiments that three groups of students from our school participated in, and evaluate how successful they were.

2

The first group were asked to make up their own personal stories about the items they had to memorise. They were encouraged making the stories as bizarre as possible, as this would facilitate learning. While some students found the method helpful, others complained it was time-consuming.

3

Students in the second group had creating amusing sentences or rhymes, using the first letters of all the words to be remembered. Many of them found this method quite straightforward and effective.

4

Finally, the third group were asked to remember a series of dates by allocating a letter of the alphabet to each number and associating those letters with an unusual image. Again, this method was particularly popular with creative students, as well as those with weaker numeric skills.

5

Overall, students thought it was worth participate in the experiments. Students with visual learning styles, creative students, or those with special educational needs seemed to benefit most. For these reasons, we suggest to carry on with the experiments, but adapting them each time to the target students.

- 3 Correct the four mistakes in the report in the use of gerunds and infinitives.

Paragraph 2: _____

Paragraph 3: _____

Paragraph 5: _____

- 4 Look at the *Writing Reference* on page 113. Imagine you participated in a memory training experiment. You can use any of the examples on this page or others from this unit. Write a report about your experience and follow the instructions.

- 1 Use the report on this page as a model.
- 2 Give your report a title and then follow this plan:
Paragraph 1 – introduce your report.
Paragraph 2 – explain the memory training method you tried.
Paragraph 3 – explain what you liked / didn't like about it.
Paragraph 4 – say if you would recommend it to other students.

Reminder

- Give a reason for why you liked / didn't like something.
- Use language for making a formal recommendation.

2 Adventurers

READING

- 1 Read the text quickly. What do the people have in common?

- A They have all had to escape from their country.
- B They are all experiencing life in another country.
- C They have all emigrated for economic reasons.

They've come a long way!



Kuru:

I come from a small Amazonian tribe in the Brazilian rainforest. One day, a film crew came to shoot a documentary. When they saw how interested I was in their equipment,

they put me in touch with an NGO that runs training programmes for indigenous people. I got a grant to study English and technology in the US. With the knowledge I gain here, I can return home and help our tribe survive in the modern world.

So far, the experience has been amazing: the people, the cities, my studies! The hardest things for me to get used to are the cold weather in winter and all the greasy fast food.



Zainab:

I was terrified when my husband told me he had arranged for me to join him in the UK. I had never left our village, let alone Pakistan! When I arrived at Heathrow airport, he was waiting for me. We were

nervous because we hadn't seen each other since he had left for England on his own.

Fortunately, I could speak some English, so I was able to help out at my husband's restaurant. I still find it difficult to live in such a wet climate, and without my family, but I'm getting there.



Eric:

Football is very important in my country, and the Cameroon national team is one of the best in Africa. So, like most kids, I used to play football in the street with my friends.

One day, a group of Spanish talent scouts came and watched us play. They must have liked what they saw, because they invited me to train in Spain. I couldn't believe it! I felt like my hero and compatriot, Samuel Eto'o, who had made it big in Barcelona. And thankfully, I'm not alone here. My elder brother is here too, to look after me.

- 2 Read the texts again and answer the questions about the people.

- 1 Who plans to return home in the future? _____
- 2 Who has someone to care for them? _____
- 3 Who was frightened about going to the new country? _____
- 4 Who doesn't mention anything negative about life in the new country? _____
- 5 Who was helped by a charity? _____
- 6 Who wasn't discovered by anyone? _____

- 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why did the film crew put Kuru in touch with the NGO? _____
- 2 What are Kuru's hopes for the future? _____
- 3 Why were Zainab and her husband nervous? _____
- 4 What are the hardest aspects of her Zainab's life? _____
- 5 How was Eric discovered? _____
- 6 What is Eric's connection with Samuel Eto'o? _____

WORD
ZONE

EXTRA

More expressions that mean 'alone'

- 4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. You can use some of the words more than once and sometimes there is more than one option.

alone lonely single-handed sole solitary

- 1 In _____ sailing, there's only one crew member on board.
- 2 The boy was the _____ survivor of the tragic accident.
- 3 I sometimes like to stay home _____ - it helps me think.
- 4 My sister felt very _____ when she was away because she missed her friends and family.

- 5 Answer the question with your own opinion.

Would you ever consider going abroad to study or work? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Travel & adventure

6 Write the words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Climbing Mount Kilimanjaro is a real ch_____ for me. I just hope I'll be able to do it.
- 2 The Titanic hit an iceberg on its very first vo_____.
- 3 We were faced with a true di_____: we either had to cross the snowy pass, or take a long detour around the mountains.
- 4 Becoming the first mountaineer to reach the summit without oxygen is my go_____, and I'm working hard to achieve it.
- 5 Before they built the motorway, it was an eight-hour jo_____ to get to the village.

7 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

avoid cross damage encounter
enjoy face learn suffer from

- 1 Our jeep was _____ in the collision.
- 2 In order to _____ dehydration, you should drink plenty of fluids.
- 3 The village regularly _____ flooding when the snow on the mountains melts.
- 4 We saw several herds of camels when we _____ the desert.
- 5 We had never been camping before, but we soon _____ from experience.
- 6 _____ with a steep glacier, the hikers decided to turn back.
- 7 The divers _____ some serious setbacks when they were trying to return to the surface.
- 8 We _____ the isolation of the small mountain village, as it was so peaceful.

8 Complete the advert with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Nobody ever complains
of ¹ _____
(bore) on our action-
packed holidays!

Your days will be filled
with ² _____
(challenge) and

³ _____ (enjoy) activities in the open air. You can go trekking in the jungle, climb glaciers or cross the desert in a jeep; always accompanied by ⁴ _____ (experience) guides. There is no need to bring a lot of luggage. All the necessary ⁵ _____ (equip) and ⁶ _____ (protect) clothing will be provided.



WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to accidents at sea

9 Match the words to the definitions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 drift | A a small boat used for emergencies |
| 2 sink | B a piece of wood used for rowing a boat |
| 3 castaway | C suffering from nausea on a ship |
| 4 drown | D to die because you are underwater too long and can't breathe |
| 5 lifeboat | E a ship for transporting goods |
| 6 oar | F a floating platform, usually made of wood |
| 7 shipwreck | G when a ship is destroyed at sea |
| 8 cargo ship | H a person who has survived an accident at sea |
| 9 raft | I to go down below the surface of water |
| 10 seasick | J to be carried along by currents of water |
| 11 wash up | K to be brought to the shore by the sea |

10 Complete the film review with the correct form of the words from exercise 9.

Life of Pi ★★★★★

Ang Lee's gorgeous 3D movie is an incredible tale of survival at sea, with two most unusual

¹ _____ . Pi Patel, a young Indian boy, is travelling on board a Japanese

² _____ bound for Canada, along with his family and some of the animals from their zoo.

One night, during a freak storm, the ship

³ _____. Everybody on the ship, including Pi's family, ⁴ _____. Pi, who has managed to survive the ⁵ _____, finds himself ⁶ _____ around the Pacific Ocean in a ⁷ _____. He believes he's alone, until he discovers the zoo's Bengal tiger, a formidable animal with the strange name of Richard Parker, under a piece of tarpaulin.

To get away from the tiger, Pi builds himself a ⁸ _____ from life jackets and ⁹ _____, which he ties to the boat. He spends his day fishing, trying to keep himself and Richard Parker alive. Eventually, he is able to control the tiger by rocking the boat, which makes the animal feel ¹⁰ _____, and blowing a whistle.

After 227 days of hardship, during which boy and tiger learn to tolerate each other's presence, the lifeboat ¹¹ _____ on the coast of Mexico. What happens next you'll have to see for yourself. A great film!



GRAMMAR

Past simple, continuous & perfect | Contrasting structures

- 1 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

An unlucky traveller

At the age of 55, Daniel

(already retire) from his stressful job as a bank manager, and he

(find) work as a French teacher in Vietnam. He (always

dream) of going there. He (get on) very well with his students, and some of them

(invite) him to their village. The journey was long and hot, and on the way back Daniel

(collapse), and his students (take) him to hospital,

where doctors (say) that he (suffer) a minor heart

attack. Then, while he (cross) the street to get a taxi home, a motorbike

(hit) him, and Daniel (go) straight back to

hospital, where he (spend) another week. But worst of all, when he

(finally leave) hospital and (return) to work, the

language school (fire) him because he (miss) too many

classes. Luckily, however, he (soon get) a better job there and is now enjoying his new life.



2 Correct the sentences.

- 1 Carl jogged in the park when a dog bit him.

- 2 My horse was stumbling over a rock when I was galloping across the fields.

- 3 While we saw many exotic animals, we were trekking through the jungle.

- 4 Alice was spraining her ankle when she ran the race.

- 5 My mother was having dinner while the phone rang.

3 Complete the sentences with your own explanations in the past perfect.

- 1 Susanna was late for class because
_____.
- 2 The building was evacuated because
_____.

- 3 The hikers got lost because
_____.

- 4 Marie fell asleep with a big smile on her face because
_____.

- 5 He was given a medal because
_____.

- 6 Federico got really sunburnt because
_____.

4 Combine the sentences, using the word in brackets to link them.

- 1 It was bitterly cold. They went for a walk. (although)

- 2 She lost the first few games. She remained positive. (in spite of)

- 3 He didn't get the promotion. He had worked hard. (even though)

- 4 She suffered a lot of setbacks. She managed to finish the race. (despite)

- 5 Juan was afraid of heights. His mother took him to the Eiffel Tower. (in spite of)

5 Rewrite the sentences in two different ways, using the sentence beginnings given.

- 1 Richard is highly qualified, but he didn't get the job.
Despite his _____.
Despite being _____.

- 2 Although Amelie was tired, she couldn't sleep.
In spite of her _____.
In spite of being _____.

- 3 Even though Sami got injured, he was able to get back to the base camp.
Despite getting _____.
Despite his _____.

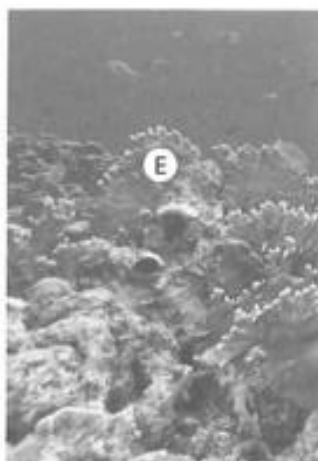
- 4 They planned the expedition carefully, but a lot of things went wrong.
In spite of their _____.
In spite of planning _____.

6 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- 1 Although my Maths teacher is very patient,
_____.
- 2 The team _____, in spite of all their training.
- 3 Despite not having much money, my friends and I
_____.
- 4 Even though I used lots of sun cream
_____.

LISTENING

1 Label the photos with the correct words from the box.



coral reef dive mask fangs flippers
jellyfish snorkel wetsuit

- A _____
B _____
C _____
D _____
E _____
F _____
G _____

2 You are going to listen to an instructor talking to a group of people about to go snorkelling in Indonesia. Before you listen, tick the topics you think the instructor will mention. Then listen and check.

boats _____ snakes _____
clothes _____ storms _____
glasses _____ turtles _____

3 Listen again and complete the summary of the recording with the word(s) you hear.

- 1 The instructor recommends using lots of _____.
- 2 He says that if you don't have a T-shirt or shorts to wear diving, you can hire a _____.
- 3 For short-sighted and long-sighted people there are _____ dive masks.
- 4 The tourists are warned that they mustn't _____ the coral.
- 5 The instructor says it's OK to swim along with the turtles if you keep _____.
- 6 On their excursion, they will see many _____ fish.
- 7 They should be careful of jellyfish because they can give you a _____.
- 8 There may also be some _____ snakes.
- 9 Divers who are frightened of snakes are told not to _____.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

4 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why does the instructor recommend wearing a T-shirt and shorts?

- 2 What two things does the instructor offer that come in all sizes?

- 3 What do contact lens wearers normally do?

- 4 What is said about turtles? What are they like?

- 5 Why are sea snakes unlikely to bite you?

- 6 What might happen if you look at a sea snake directly?

5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 What's more, you can really hurt yourself as the coral's very sharp.

- 2 My colleagues and I will be on the lookout and will warn you if we see any.

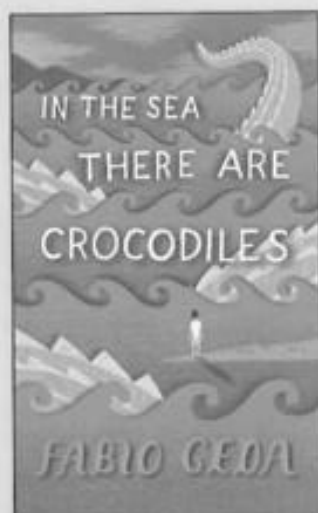
- 3 Well folks, that's about it. Let's get started.

READING

1 Read the text quickly and look at the map. Write down the different stages of Enaiat's journey, as well as the means of transport he had to use.

- 1 From Afghanistan to _____ on _____ and by _____.
- 2 From _____ to _____ by _____.

- 3 From _____ to _____ by _____, on _____ and by _____.
- 4 From _____ to _____ in a(n) _____.
- 5 From _____ to _____ by _____.



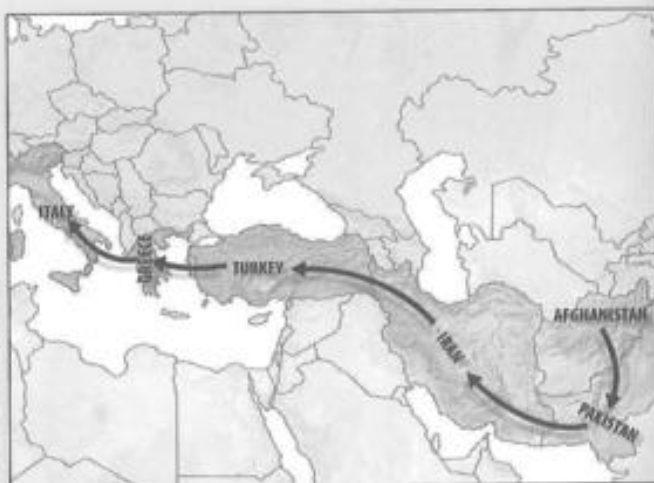
In the sea there are crocodiles

We normally think of adventurers as intrepid explorers, travelling to exotic, faraway lands. This is the story of another kind of adventurer – a young boy, making his way, on his own, from one of those distant lands to the West.

Enaiatollah Akbari was only ten years old when he woke up to find himself all alone in Quetta, Pakistan. His mother had taken him there from his native Afghanistan, first on foot and then by lorry, to keep him safe from the Taliban. This was because his family were Hazaras, a people of Mongolian ancestry with a long history of persecution and ill-treatment by Afghan rulers.

And so his odyssey started. With his mother having returned to their village to look after his younger siblings, Enaiat was left to fend for himself in Pakistan. He survived doing odd jobs at a hostel and later selling cigarettes and snacks in the street.

Once he'd saved up enough money, he paid a people trafficker to take him to Iran, squashed in the back of a pick-up truck, lured by the prospect of better-paid work. For the next 3 years Enaiat worked on building sites and factories, spurred on by a new dream: to get to Turkey and



then Europe. This meant that he had to turn to the people traffickers again.

The journey was an absolute nightmare: they took a bus to the border, and then walked. After a gruelling 26-day trek across icy mountains, without proper shoes, 65 of the original 77 migrants stumbled into Turkey; 12 had perished along the way. The survivors were squeezed into a box underneath a lorry for three days, until they got to Istanbul.

From Turkey, Enaiat crossed over to Greece in an inflatable dinghy. There were four of them when they set out, but one of the boys drowned. With the help of some Greeks, Enaiat got to Athens by bus and ferry, where he spent two relatively prosperous months working as an illegal labourer during the build-up to the 2004 Olympics. Then the work dried up and he needed to move on.

After many failed attempts, Enaiat sneaked on board a cargo ship and hid in a container. He didn't know it then, but the ship would take him to Italy, where he had a contact; a young man from his village. His friend first put him in touch with the Office for Foreign Minors and later with an Italian family who took him in.

Supported by his Italian adoptive family, Enaiat eventually succeeded in legalizing his situation. He was finally recognized as a political refugee and granted asylum. He even managed to get in touch with his mother.

Enaiat's moving story is told by Italian journalist Fabio Geda, and based on the conversations he had with the young man.

GLOSSARY

fend for yourself	to take care of yourself without depending on anyone
lure	to attract
be spurred on by	to be motivated or encouraged by
dinghy	a small life boat made of rubber or synthetic material
grant asylum	to give protection to and allow someone to reside legally in a country

- 2 Read the text again. Which of these adjectives would you use to describe Enaiat? You can choose more than one.

brave impractical independent lucky
persistent resourceful spoilt stubborn

- 3 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What does the author say about the traditional view of adventurers?
 - A They are daring people from exotic countries.
 - B They are mostly young people.
 - C They are brave people who explore distant countries.
 - D They tend to travel by themselves.
- 2 Enaiat left Afghanistan because:
 - A he wanted to find work to help his mother.
 - B his people were oppressed there.
 - C his mother had no time to look after him.
 - D he had offended the Taliban.
- 3 Enaiat decided to go to Iran because:
 - A it was on the way to Turkey.
 - B he wanted to work in a factory.
 - C he had found a job there.
 - D people had told him about jobs there.
- 4 What do we learn about the journey to Turkey?
 - A Nearly one-sixth of the migrants died on the way.
 - B Only twenty per cent of the migrants made it to Turkey.
 - C He got there by lorry.
 - D There were very few survivors.
- 5 What did Enaiat do in Greece?
 - A He helped some Greeks get to Athens.
 - B He earned quite good money for a couple of months.
 - C He went to the Olympics.
 - D He found he had some rich relatives.
- 6 What do we learn about Enaiat's voyage to Italy?
 - A He planned to go to Italy because he had a friend there.
 - B He had always dreamt of going there.
 - C He happened to pick a ship that was going there.
 - D He had been invited by an Italian family.

- 4 How do these people relate to Enaiat's story?

- 1 His mother _____
- 2 People traffickers _____
- 3 Some Greek people _____
- 4 His friend in Italy _____
- 5 Fabio Geda _____

VOCABULARY

Common abstract nouns & related words

- 5 Look at the picture and circle the correct options.



- 6 Complete the questions with the correct forms of the words in brackets and then answer them.

- 1 Do you prefer the _____ (hot) of summer, or the _____ (cold) of winter?

 - 2 Can you describe what your _____ (strong) are?

 - 3 Which is better, your sense of _____ (taste), or your sense of _____ (smell)?

 - 4 What do you think is the average _____ (weigh) of your school bag?

 - 5 Are you a member of any _____ (young) clubs or organizations?

 - 6 How many _____ (long) of a 50-metre pool can you swim?

- 7 Look back at **Verb Zone** in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 2.

- 8 Complete the sentences with multi-part verbs from exercise 7. Put the verbs in the correct form.

- 1 He _____ the formidable task of translating the complete works of Shakespeare into Japanese.
- 2 While cycling, she found it very difficult _____ the insects buzzing around her head.
- 3 We _____ on our walking holiday at dawn, when the weather was still cool.
- 4 I find that having a language exchange with a foreign student is the best way _____ my German.
- 5 She _____ her dream of being the first teenager to swim solo across the Pacific Ocean. It was just too difficult.

GRAMMAR

Past perfect continuous

1 Circle the correct words.

- When Tina arrived at the party, her friends **had been going / had gone**.
- I **had written / had been writing** emails for hours when my computer crashed.
- Davide couldn't do the shopping because he **had been leaving / had left** his wallet at home.
- Masami and Akiko **had been fighting / had fought** all morning until their mother told them to stop.
- We **had stood / had been standing** in the queue for ages before we got to the ticket window.
- After the teacher **had left / had been leaving**, the pupils carried on with their homework.

2 Write complete sentences from the prompts, using the past perfect continuous and past simple.

- We / only / play tennis / for half an hour / when / start / rain

- Natasha / be / exhausted / because / she / study / all day

- It / rain / for weeks / when / the river / flood

- Nellie / try / fix / her computer / herself / for hours / but / she / not be able to

- My uncle / only / work / in the company / for 3 months / when / he / get / a promotion

- My mother / come home / furious / because / she / argue / with her boss / all day

3 Write explanations for these situations, using the past perfect continuous.

- Peter was standing in the kitchen, crying.
Peter was crying because _____.
- Ben and Alec were sweating profusely when they got back.

- My sister overslept on Monday morning.

- Our dog came running into the kitchen, with scratches on its face.

- Allie and Maria were bright red when they came back from the swimming pool.

- Bob looked extremely happy when he put down the phone.

4 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

In 1963, when Dervla Murphy was 31, she ¹ _____

_____ (leave) her native Ireland for India.

She ² _____

_____ (plan) this trip ever since her tenth birthday, when

her parents ³ _____ (give) her a bicycle and an atlas. It was no ordinary holiday, because Dervla

⁴ _____ (intend) to cycle all the way.

Throughout her journey, she had many adventures and mishaps.

She ⁵ _____ (endure) extremes of

heat and cold, ⁶ _____ (suffer) all

kinds of discomfort and, on many occasions, ⁷ _____

_____ (face) personal danger. While she ⁸ _____

_____ (cross) the former Yugoslavia, she

⁹ _____ (defend) herself against

a pack of wolves that ¹⁰ _____

(watch) her, and ¹¹ _____ (wait) to

attack. And she ¹² _____ (break)

three ribs when an angry tribesman accidentally ¹³ _____

_____ (fall) on her while he ¹⁴ _____

_____ (fight) with another man on an Afghan bus.

Always short of food, she often nearly ¹⁵ _____

_____ (starve). Yet she never ¹⁶ _____

_____ (think) of giving up ...



5 Complete the text with verbs in the box in the correct tense.

arrive continue cover cycle help out
keep return stay take write

When she eventually ¹⁷ _____ in India, she ¹⁸ _____ for 175 days and she ¹⁹ _____ a distance of over 7,000 km. She ²⁰ _____ in India for about a year. While she ²¹ _____ at a refugee camp in Dharamsala, she ²² _____

_____ an interest in the cause of Tibetan refugees.

Finally, she ²³ _____ home, where she ²⁴ _____ her first two books,

Full Tilt: Ireland to India with a Bicycle, and *Tibetan Foothold*, based on the diaries she ²⁵ _____ on her travels. Dervla Murphy ²⁶ _____ writing and produced over twenty travel books.

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Write questions to get the missing information in the text. Write the questions using *you*, as if you were interviewing Mark Inglis directly.

Mark Inglis used to work as ¹ _____ in New Zealand. His life took a dramatic turn one day in 1982, while he ² _____. He was caught in a snowstorm and trapped in an ice cave. When he was finally rescued after ³ _____, his legs had ⁴ _____.



However, Inglis refused to let his disability stop him from climbing. On 15 May 2006, after forty days of climbing, he ⁵ _____ Mount Everest, the world's tallest mountain at ⁶ _____ metres. Inglis used ⁷ _____ for his ascent.

Inglis, a goodwill ambassador for the Everest Rescue Trust and founder of the charity Limbs4All, insisted that, though he felt ⁸ _____ his achievement, his main goal was to raise funds to provide artificial legs for disabled people in Tibet.

- 1 _____ ?
- 2 _____ ?
- 3 _____ ?
- 4 _____ ?
- 5 _____ ?
- 6 _____ ?
- 7 _____ ?
- 8 _____ ?

Now go online and find the answers to the questions.

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 Who was the first person to sail solo around the world?

- 2 Which famous actor is the third cousin of British adventurer, Ranulph Fiennes?

- 3 Is the Amazon the longest river in the world?

- 4 What is the biggest city in the Amazon rainforest?

- 5 Which city will host the Summer Paralympic Games in 2020?

- 6 What is the difference between the North Pole and the South Pole? (Clue: It's a joke)

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. Are Gary and Greg looking at the same thing? What are they looking at?



INTERACTION

Discussing an extreme proposition

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you totally approve of someone's idea?
- when you hear some disappointing news?
- when you are shocked by something another person wants to do?



- 2 Complete the conversation between three friends, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

anything worse Absolutely not Think of can't be serious
anything more exciting it's a brilliant idea great shame

Louis: Hi guys, I've got some interesting news! You know Daniele's dad, the TV producer? Well, he's come up with this great concept for a new reality show – and we could be in it!

Jo: Wow, I can't imagine¹ _____.
I've always wanted to be on TV.

Sara: Hang on a second. Those shows can be pretty stupid.

Louis: This one's really cool. It's going to be called *I Dare You*, and contestants face new challenges every week. They're looking for resourceful and imaginative young people to take part.

Jo: That sounds just like us.

Sara: What kind of challenges are we talking about?

Louis: All sorts: eating insects, sleeping in a room full of spiders, or being buried alive ...

Sara: What? You² _____.

Louis: I'm serious.³ _____ the opportunity. And the sense of achievement. We might even win. There are some fantastic prizes like ...

Sara: Never mind that. I can't imagine

⁴ _____.

Louis: That's a⁵ _____!
I thought you were the adventurous type.

Jo: Well, I think⁶ _____.
Come on Sara – please say yes.

Sara: ⁷ _____.

- 3 Find words or expressions in the conversation that mean:

- to challenge someone to take part in an activity
- ingenious, clever, capable
- to put in a hole and cover with earth
- an accomplishment, when you have been able to complete something

- 4 Match the sentences.

- Have you heard? Karen has lost her job!
 - So first he borrows all that money from you, and now he doesn't even answer your calls?
 - Imagine sailing around the world on a private yacht.
 - When she heard she had won the award, she couldn't say anything.
 - If someone invited me to Paris, I wouldn't think about it twice.
- A She was totally lost for words.
B Amazing! That would be the trip of a lifetime.
C That really takes the biscuit.
D Neither would I. I'd go in a flash.
E So have Jim and I. We're all in the same boat.

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 26 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Modifiers

A rather B absolutely C quite

27

READING

1 Read the text quickly. What is its main objective?

- A To compare the Arab Spring to the Revolutions of 1989.
- B To explain the phenomenon of the Arab Spring.
- C To describe the death of a young Tunisian.
- D To explain the role of the internet in the revolts.

The Arab Spring



In December 2010, some twenty years after the fall of the Berlin Wall, a wave of popular revolts, which have become known as the Arab Spring, spread across parts of North Africa and the Middle East.

The spark that ignited the protests was the suicide of a young Tunisian street vendor, Mohamed Bouazizi, who set himself on fire on 17 December, to protest against the confiscation of his wares by the authorities.

Following Bouazizi's death, trouble broke out all over Tunisia. Thousands of enraged young Arabs, many of them jobless, took to the streets, to protest against the lack of opportunities. Complaints about widespread corruption, rising food prices, and a general lack of freedom persuaded other Tunisians to join the demonstrations. The government responded with a violent crackdown.

One notable difference between the Arab Spring and the 1989 revolutions in Eastern Europe, with which it is often compared, was the role played by the internet. Many ordinary citizens went to the trouble of recording and reporting acts of government brutality and human rights abuses online, where they spread like wildfire.

Tunisia's so-called 'Jasmine Revolution' culminated in the fall of President Ben Ali's despotic regime. It was a victory of the common people and perhaps the first time in history that an Arab dictator was removed by a revolution, instead of a military uprising.

Inspired by Tunisia's example, Egyptian demonstrators took control of Tahrir Square in central Cairo at the end of January 2011. President Mubarak, who had ruled the country with an iron fist for 30 years, defied the protesters, but on 10th February he was forced to step down.

The success of the Egyptian revolution encouraged further revolts in Yemen, Bahrain, Libya and Syria. The case of Libya, where protests escalated into a full-blown civil war, received a lot of media attention. After months of fighting, Colonel Gaddafi was killed by rebels and a transitional council took control of the country.

At present, the outcome of many of these revolts is still unclear. However, of one thing we can be sure: the eyes of the world will be watching them.

2 Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Mohamed Bouazizi committed suicide because ...
 - A he wanted to protest against his precarious situation.
 - B he had been fired.
 - C he was a political activist.
 - D he suffered from a mental illness.
- 2 Which of these is mentioned as a reason for the protests in Tunisia?
 - A An increase in taxes.
 - B Religious conflicts.
 - C Outrage over Bouazizi's death.
 - D Information on the internet.
- 3 What is said about the internet?
 - A It was as important as during the 1989 revolutions.
 - B It was shut down by the government.
 - C It provided information about government repression.
 - D It was a useful instrument for political parties.
- 4 In paragraph 4, what is meant by '...citizens went to the trouble of recording and reporting...'?
 - A Citizens got into trouble over this.
 - B Citizens made a big effort to do this.
 - C Citizens caused a lot of trouble for the government.
 - D Citizens gave up doing this because it was too difficult.
- 5 What was special about the Jasmine Revolution?
 - A No Arab army had ever been able to remove a dictator.
 - B The common people and the army took power together.
 - C No Arab dictator had ever been overthrown.
 - D Ordinary citizens had never before defeated a dictator.

WORD ZONE

EXTRA

More expressions with *trouble*

3 Match the sentences.

- 1 My little brother is terribly naughty.
 - 2 The last Maths exam was quite easy.
 - 3 I filled in the application form online.
- A That saved me the trouble of having to go to the post office.
 - B I managed to answer all the questions without too much trouble.
 - C He just can't keep out of trouble.

VOCABULARY

Countries & politics

4 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box.

border demonstration independence
monarchy president riots

- 1 Every day, hundreds of refugees are crossing the _____ to get away from the violence.
- 2 The police have been called in to deal with the violent _____ at the prison.
- 3 A state with a king or queen is called a _____.
- 4 Thousands of citizens took to the streets in a massive _____ against new government legislation.
- 5 The head of state in a republic is called the _____.
- 6 Many former colonies had to fight a war of liberation to gain their _____.

5 For each line, cross out the word that does not go with the word in bold.

- 1 **ethnic**: cleansing, country, minority, music, violence
- 2 **mass**: media, money, production, protests, unemployment
- 3 **gain**: independence, time, votes, a war, weight
- 4 **outbreak of**: an epidemic, fighting, rioting, prison, the Second World War
- 5 **ruling**: citizen, class, elite, party, president

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 In most European countries, governments are _____ elected. (democrat)
- 2 It is _____ of a government to impose its will on the people. (democrat)
- 3 Many developing countries are undergoing a process of _____, holding elections and choosing their representatives. (democrat)
- 4 The UK Conservative party won several elections under the _____ of Margaret Thatcher. (lead)
- 5 Nelson Mandela was an inspirational _____ for his people. (lead)
- 6 Apple is one of the _____ companies in the field of technology. (lead)
- 7 NGOs are non-_____ organisations. (govern)
- 8 Arnold Schwarzenegger was _____ of the state of California for many years. (govern)
- 9 During the time of Mussolini, Italy was a _____, (dictate)
- 10 Freedom fighters put an end to the _____ regime of Gaddafi. (dictate)

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to voting

7 Read the text and complete the summary below with the words or phrases in bold. You do not need to change any of them.



Until the late nineteenth century, the **electoral laws** of many Western democracies only allowed adult males who paid property tax (in other words, relatively prosperous landowners) to **cast their votes**. Moreover, property was not the only requirement. In some countries the **right to vote** depended on origin or religion.

Universal suffrage, which is the extension of the right to vote to all adult citizens, was originally limited to men only. **Female voters** were not included until some 10 to 20 years later.

On the brink of the twentieth century, women in many countries launched campaigns to obtain the right to vote. Some women called **suffragettes** favoured a militant approach, which included interrupting political meetings, damaging public property and even detonating bombs. Their motto was 'Deeds not Words'.

In 1893, New Zealand became the first country that **granted** women the right to vote. Shortly after that, women in South Australia became the first to obtain the right to **stand for parliament**. British women had to wait until after the First World War to be given limited voting rights.

Notable latecomers were France, where women could not vote until 1945, Italy (1946), Belgium (1948) and Switzerland (1971).

The concept of ¹ _____ means that all citizens can ² _____. However, in the past, the ³ _____ of many countries actually limited people's

⁴ _____. Women activists, called ⁵ _____, fought for the right to include

⁶ _____. Women in Switzerland were weren't ⁷ _____ suffrage until 1971, but now women in most countries can not only vote but also ⁸ _____.

GRAMMAR

Present perfect simple & continuous

- 1 Complete the conversations with verbs in the box, using past simple or present perfect simple.

arrive be born come decide enjoy get on go have
join know live love meet setup send spend

Andy: Who's your best friend, Sue?

Sue: My best friend is a girl called Wang Ji.

Andy: Oh really? How long¹ _____ you
_____ each other?

Sue: For 15 years. We² _____ at primary school
and we³ _____ always _____ well.

Andy:⁴ _____ she _____ here?

Sue: Oh yes, Wang Ji⁵ _____ her whole life here.
Her parents⁶ _____ to the UK 25 years
ago and⁷ _____ a small business. Wang Ji
⁸ _____ never even _____ to China.

Pete: A new student⁹ _____ just _____ our
class – a guy called Kim.

Karen: Kim? Isn't that a girl's name?

Pete: Not in Korea, which is where he's from. He only
¹⁰ _____ in the UK 3 months ago and his
English isn't that great, but he's a really nice guy.

Karen: Why¹¹ _____ he _____ to study here?

Pete: He¹² _____ no choice really. The company
his dad works for¹³ _____ him here;
he travels a lot. Imagine, Kim¹⁴ _____
already _____ in Japan, China and Russia.
Apparently, he¹⁵ _____ Japan, but he
¹⁶ _____ Russia that much; it was too cold.

- 2 Put the words in order to make sentences in the present perfect simple or continuous.

1 in / never / Eastern Europe / been / have / anywhere / I

2 for / been / Russia / has / Harriet / a year / studying / in

3 ever / the / anything / on / you / internet / have / sold / ?

4 has / trouble / starting / having / the car / Dad / been

5 lately / have / what / doing / been / you / ?

- 3 Complete this news report with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

announce be demonstrate do
disagree fire protest say

About 500,000 people¹ _____
in the city centre again yesterday. There
² _____ mass demonstrations
nearly every day since the new government took power.
People³ _____ against proposed
spending cuts in health and education. Moreover, the
government⁴ _____ 5,000 civil
servants already, and plans to dismiss another 2,000 in the
next couple of months. At a press conference this morning, a
government spokesperson⁵ _____
that these measures are necessary, and that the government
⁶ _____ and will continue to do
everything they can to rescue the economy. However, the
opposition party⁷ _____. They
⁸ _____ plans to organize another
march for tomorrow. For the moment, tensions in the street
remain high and it looks as if these protests are here to stay.

- 4 Correct the mistakes.

1 I have been writing ten emails this morning.

2 I have this car for two years now.

3 My grandfather has never gone abroad.

4 They have worked all morning, but they still haven't
finished the project.

5 My parents have got married 25 years ago.

6 What have you done for the last two hours?

7 When have you last bought a CD?

8 We can't get her that book because she already read it.

LISTENING



1 You are going to listen to part of a radio show in which two callers are given clues about eight famous people or icons. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 stepfather
- 2 ancestry
- 3 androgynous
- 4 outrageous
- 5 villain

- A extravagant, shocking
- B evil character
- C the man who is married to your mother but not your real father
- D with a mix of female and male characteristics
- E family origins

2 Listen and answer the questions. What are the jobs of the six icons?

- 1 Numbers 1 and 2 are _____.
- 2 Number 3 is a(n) _____.
- 3 Number 4 is a(n) _____.
- 4 Numbers 5 and 6 work in _____. One is a(n) _____ and the other a(n) _____.

3 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Icon number one moved several times ...
 - A in order to study foreign languages.
 - B for family reasons.
 - C for his work.
- 2 Icon number 2 ...
 - A used her studies to advance in her career.
 - B studied languages at university.
 - C studied something unrelated to her current career.
- 3 Icon number 3 ...
 - A was born in the 1970s.
 - B is unsure about his identity.
 - C has an unusual feature.

4 Icon number 4 ...

- A broke five world records at the 2008 Olympics.
- B was the first runner to break 100m and 200m world records at the same Olympics.
- C was the first Jamaican to win an Olympic medal.

5 Icon number 5 ...

- A has made a wide range of films.
- B is American.
- C won an Oscar in 2005 for a martial arts movie.

6 Icon number 6 ...

- A once played James Bond.
- B has been nominated for 8 Oscars.
- C was the first actor from his country to win an Oscar.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

4 Write the names of the icons.

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 _____ | 4 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 6 _____ |

5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Which country did icon 1 move to after his parents' divorce?

- 2 What did icon 2 study?

- 3 What was the name of one of the stage personalities of icon 3?

- 4 How many world records did icon 4 break at the 2008 Olympics?

- 5 Where is icon 5 from?

- 6 What was the title of the James Bond film in which icon 6 appeared?

6 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 I should have guessed that!

- 2 She got involved in politics.

- 3 He was the first Spanish actor to be nominated for an Oscar.

READING

1 Look at the extract and the heading and first sentence of the text. What is the text about?

- A Changes in EU politics.
- B The way politicians see the role of the EU.
- C Politicians who want to leave the EU.
- D Ordinary citizens questioning the EU.

Scepticism, or *skepticism* in American English, comes from the Greek word *σκέψις* or *skepsis*, which means 'enquiry'. It is used to refer to a group of philosophical ideas which range from saying that we can never really know anything at all to encouraging us to maintain a questioning attitude towards knowledge, facts or opinions that are stated as facts.

However, when applied to the European Union (EU), the terms Euroscepticism and Eurosceptic are normally defined more narrowly:

Eurosceptic ['ju:ɹəʊskeptɪk]

n. a person opposed to closer links with the European Union

Eurosceptic / Eurosceptical

adj. opposing closer links with the European Union

Eurosceptics

After the initial euphoria, enthusiasm for the European Union has given way to mixed feelings. Here is what some EU citizens have to say.



Pauline
from the UK

My father grew up in the aftermath of the Second World War and he saw the European Union as the best way to prevent future wars. Traditionally, my family are working class people, involved in the Labour Party and the trade unions. We believed that free trade agreements would bring more jobs and prosperity. However, I've come to change my mind. EU involvement has gone too far, with bureaucrats thinking up rules for everything, from trivialities like how to sell eggs, to serious matters such as being able to extradite terrorists. I believe the UK should withdraw from the EU, sooner rather than later.



Luís
from Portugal

I studied journalism, but I've never had a stable job. Young people can only find precarious, temporary jobs for very low wages. Changes in the labour law have meant that anybody can lose their job any time. The unions have become powerless. We also feel very disappointed with the opposition, who seem incapable of offering any alternatives to the government's austerity policy. That's why I have joined a group that opposes the Troika (the EU, the International Monetary Fund and the European central bank). We organize street protests against all these cuts that are impoverishing our country. Condemning more and more people to unemployment is just asking for trouble.



Katarzyna
from Poland

I grew up in the time of the Solidarity movement. We were really optimistic then and we believed that a unified Europe would be a place of opportunity. But I'm afraid it hasn't worked out like that. Full-time employment is very hard to get, and wages have remained low. Fortunately for us, Polish people have a strong work-ethic and are willing to work long hours at four or five different jobs, just to make ends meet. That's why it makes me angry when I hear some people complain about people from newer EU countries coming over to work. It's as if we are second-rate citizens, taking advantage of our richer neighbours. If you ask me, EU membership has brought more trouble than it's worth.



Heinz
from Germany

Don't get me wrong; I don't support Alternative for Germany, and I think that pulling out of the euro would be madness. European countries need to stick together, if we want to play any kind of role in world politics. But I also think that some countries should look closely at the way they run their economies. Overspending, corruption and the bursting of the housing bubble are all problems that need to be avoided in future. And if the richer countries are going to keep helping to support the poorer ones, I think it's only fair that we ask for some changes in the ways their economies are managed.

GLOSSARY

aftermath the period of time after a disastrous event
withdraw to break away from, remove, leave
wage payment for work; especially if on a daily or weekly basis

impoverish to make someone poorer
make ends meet to survive on the money that you have

2 Answer the questions about the people from the text.

Which person mentions ...

- 1 leaving the single currency? —
- 2 the problem of joblessness? —
- 3 the importance of European unity despite the problems? —
- 4 job instability? —
- 5 their government's policies making the people worse-off? —
- 6 the financial troubles of other countries? —
- 7 the EU as a peacemaker? —
- 8 feeling discriminated against? —
- 9 the national character of their country? —
- 10 excess regulation? —

3 Choose the correct answers.

1 In extract A, what is said about bureaucrats?

- A They are unimportant.
- B They interfere too much.
- C They fight against terrorism.
- D They create important regulations.

2 In extract B, what is said about the opposition?

- A They are powerless to defend the workers.
- B They are opposed to the Troika.
- C They are just as bad as the governing party.
- D They haven't come up with any good ideas.

3 In extract C, what does Katarzyna say makes her angry?

- A not having full-time employment
- B the fact that wages are low
- C the incorrect perception people have of people from countries like hers
- D people from newer EU countries

4 In extract D, what is meant by *the bursting of the housing bubble*?

- A people buying houses at very high prices
- B houses collapsing due to lack of money
- C a collapse in the prices of houses
- D house prices continuously rising

5 Overall, which adjectives best sum up the four attitudes to the EU?

- A hopeless and depressed
- B disillusioned and let down
- C critical but optimistic
- D furious and aggressive

VOCABULARY

People words

4 Answer the questions with the correct forms of the people words in the box.

act cycle interview law politics reside

What do you call a person who ...

- 1 helps people who have legal problems? _____
- 2 performs in film or on stage? _____
- 3 rides a bicycle? _____
- 4 is being questioned by a journalist? _____
- 5 is a member of a political party? _____
- 6 lives in a particular place? _____

5 Correct the mistakes in the people words.

- 1 He is a famous cooker with his own restaurant.

- 2 He is a scientific who works in a lab.

- 3 There are only 10,000 habitants in this town.

- 4 We have three business students working as trainers in our company, learning about management and finance.

6 Complete the sentences.

- 1 If you have siblings, then you are a _____ or a _____.
- 2 If you have uncles and aunts, then you are a _____ or a _____.
- 3 If you belong to any club or organization, you are a _____.
- 4 If you play sports, you are a _____.
- 5 If you play an instrument, you are a _____.

7 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 3.

8 Tick the correct sentences and correct the prepositions in the others.

- 1 Yugoslavia began to break up in 1990. —
- 2 I couldn't get through at the company because the line was always busy. —
- 3 He broke away from the crowd of protestors and threw a bottle. —
- 4 Although he lost three elections, he went to trying. —
- 5 Doctors are doing everything they can to stop an epidemic from breaking up. —

GRAMMAR

Relative clauses

1 Look at the sentences and then answer the questions.

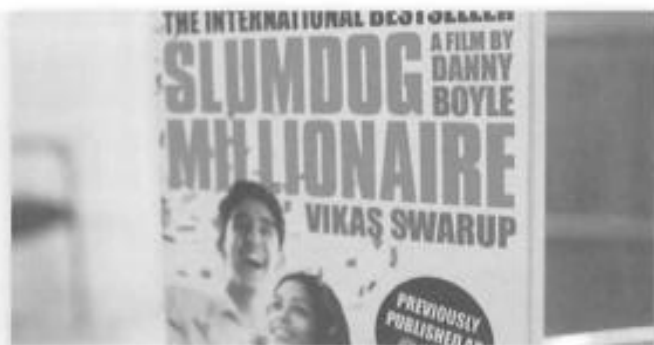
- 1 The main square is the place where most protests are being held.
- 2 The novel, which is set in an African country, is about a lady detective.
- 3 The waitress who served us was very attentive.
- 4 My friend Antonio, whose nickname is Speedy, is a very fast runner.
- 5 The explorers realised that the ruins that they had been looking for were right in front of them, covered by the jungle.

A Which sentences are defining and which are non-defining?

B In which sentence can the relative pronoun be replaced by that?

C In which sentence can the relative pronoun be omitted?

2 Complete the review with suitable pronouns.



One of my favourite books is Q & A, ¹ _____ is short for 'question and answer'. The novel, ² _____ was adapted into the film Slumdog Millionaire, is set in and around the slums of Bombay, ³ _____ Ram Mohammed Thomas was born. After losing his mother at an early age, he runs away from the slum and lives all kinds of adventures, some in the company of his good friend Salim, ⁴ _____ is an orphan too. We meet the adult Ram many years later, ⁵ _____ he is a contestant on the quiz show Who Wants to Be a Millionaire? Ram manages to answer all the questions correctly, ⁶ _____ means he's going to win a lot of money. But not if the quiz master, ⁷ _____ has been trying to trick him, can avoid it. Ram is arrested and taken to the police station, ⁸ _____ he is beaten. To prove his innocence, he has to tell his life story to a mysterious lady lawyer, ⁹ _____ has come to his rescue.

3 Write situations that explain the second parts of the sentences.

- 1 _____, which meant I couldn't revise my vocabulary before the exam.
- 2 _____, which makes him really nervous.
- 3 _____, which reminded me of the place we used to go on holiday.
- 4 _____, which is bad for their teeth.
- 5 _____, which is why the fighting went on for so long.

4 Join the halves of the sentences.

- 1 The shop only had a few T-shirts,
 - 2 My mother forces me to eat vegetables,
 - 3 In my job I meet a lot of famous people,
 - 4 My uncle has a lot of friends,
 - 5 I have seven cousins,
- A some of whom can be really arrogant.
 B none of which I liked very much.
 C some of which I can't stand.
 D all of whom are good students.
 E most of whom he has known since school.

5 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 The house in where I was born is in a small village.
- 2 I have had a lot of different English teachers, some of which were very funny.
- 3 The president, whom wife had been a singer, won the elections with a vast majority.
- 4 There have been times which I have felt very stressed at work.
- 5 The Aviator, who starred Leonardo DiCaprio, is a film about the life of Howard Hughes.
- 6 My friend wouldn't stop talking during the film, that really annoyed me.

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Complete the text with the words in the box and the correct words in bold.

boat delicious irregularly local modern outdoor pedestrian pleasure raw unusual

Good morning everyone and welcome.

If you'll all ¹ **gather / meet** around, I'll tell you about the main square, where we're standing. As you can see, there are many ² _____ cafés and terraces, where you can enjoy a ³ _____ piece of fruit pie, a speciality of the region. If you look ⁴ **exactly / right** in front of you, you can see the beautiful St Servatius Basilica.

Much of the city centre is ⁵ _____ only, so we can explore it ⁶ **by / on** foot. Today is Friday, which is one of the market days. So, let's head over to the left and walk around the stalls. The fish stands are particularly popular; here you can taste another ⁷ _____ delicacy: ⁸ _____ herring fillet with onions!

Now we're just going to ⁹ **stop / rest** for a moment at the Selexyz Dominicanen; one of the most ¹⁰ _____ and beautiful bookshops in the world, located in an old church.

We're just coming to the river now. Now, if you look ¹¹ **at / to** your right, you'll see a group of ¹² _____ structures, some built over the water, with ¹³ _____ shaped towers. Those are the government buildings where the famous treaty that gave us the euro was signed in 1992.

We're going to finish ¹⁴ **up / out** at the ¹⁵ _____ landing, from where you can take a cruise along the River Meuse. I'll say goodbye to you here. It's been a ¹⁶ _____ and I hope you'll enjoy the rest of your stay in ...!

Do you know the name of the city? If not, go online and find out.

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 What was *glasnost* and how does it relate to Mikhail Gorbachev?

- 2 What did Che Guevara have a university degree in?

- 3 Roughly how long was the Berlin Wall (in kilometres)?

- 4 What pop band was formed by Icelandic icon, Björk, in 1986?

- 5 How many years was Aung San Suu Kyi held under house arrest?

- 6 In which English county is Stonehenge situated?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think Greg says? How does he know they're not in Sweden?



INTERACTION

Making a decision

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you talk about an occasion that is unique?

- when you want to postpone a decision until someone else has spoken?

- when you are not very excited about something?

- 2 A group of friends are planning a weekend away. Complete the conversation with expressions from the box. Then listen and check.

Sounds good to me wait and hear your take on that
the point of might have something to say
something for everyone doesn't really grab me
what if Apparently

Maya: I think we should go camping in the mountains. It's not too far, it's quite cheap and Giacomo and I will even be able to practise our climbing.

Rob: That's _____, I've got no head for heights. What are the rest of us supposed to do in the meantime?

Maya: You could go hiking.
_____ some of the scenery is quite stunning.

Rob: I'm still not sure about that. Let's
_____ what Sandra has to say ... Sandra, Maya and Giacomo want to go camping and climbing. What's
_____?

Sandra: Guys, what's _____ lying in a tent, being uncomfortable, if we could stay in a luxury hotel with all the mod cons? I've found one with a spa – it's got several large pools, jacuzzis, a sauna, you name it.

Rob: _____!

Maya: And how are we going to pay for that?

Sandra: Trust me, it's quite affordable. I've found a great bargain on the internet.

Maya: Well, I don't know. Giacomo
_____ about that as well ... Giacomo, how would you like to go to a spa?

Giacomo: A spa? That's for girls, isn't it?

Sandra: Come on! Don't be so old-fashioned! This place has got _____, Apart from the pools and the beauty treatments, they also run horseback tours in the surroundings.

Giacomo: Well, _____ we at least have a look at Sandra's website?

- 3 Do you think the friends decide to go to the spa? Why / Why not? Listen and check.

- 4 Find words or expressions in the conversation that mean:

- be afraid of high places

- very beautiful

- things that make your stay more comfortable

- and so on

- something you are able to buy at an unusually low price

- 5 Match the sentences.

- Why don't we go deep sea diving?
- If we go to Tokyo, you'll be able to practise your Japanese.
- Apparently, hiking in the Alps is really amazing.
- What's the point of travelling to those remote places?
- Paris has got something for everyone.
- I've heard that a safari in Tanzania is a once-in-a-lifetime experience.

- What if we went trekking in the Himalayas instead?
- I'm not so keen on that – I might get claustrophobic.
- You can go sightseeing, shopping, and eat all kinds of great food.
- There are so many beautiful spots in our own country.
- That doesn't really grab me. I'm not into wildlife.
- I'm not sure – I'm not really into crowded cities.

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 6 Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 36 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

A profile

WRITING SKILL

Adding information

1 Rewrite the sentences using the expressions in brackets.

- 1 The hotel is quite close to the beach and my friends will be staying there. (Not only) _____
- 2 I'll get a salary, a company car and some other perks. (as well as) _____
- 3 She has three children and works part-time in a school – and she's doing a Master's degree. (In addition) _____

2 Read the profile and put paragraphs A–E in the correct order. Then match the paragraphs to headings 1–5.

- 1 A turning point
- 2 An icon
- 3 Victory at last
- 4 First achievements
- 5 Early life

A
Born into the Xhosa tribe, Mandela's father's family belonged to the Thembu royal family. Despite their relatively high social status, both his parents were illiterate. His Christian mother sent him to a Methodist school where he was given the name 'Nelson' by his teacher. Mandela later went on to study law at a Johannesburg university, where he was the only native African student.

B
People around the world campaigned for Mandela's release, which finally came about in February 1990. In a famous speech, broadcast globally, Mandela declared that he was committed to peace and reconciliation with the white minority. In 1994 he was elected South Africa's first black President. The rest, as they say, is history.

C
The twentieth century person I admire most is Nelson Mandela because he was able to forgive those who had imprisoned him for 27 years, steer his party towards peaceful resistance, ¹ **and** lead his country to democracy.

D
After 1948, when the Afrikaner National Party started implementing Apartheid, Mandela became increasingly politicized, collaborating closely with the ANC (African National Congress). In 1950 he was elected President of the Transvaal Branch. Mandela worked as a lawyer, fighting unjust racial laws, ² **and** was involved in a militant organization which bombed government targets.

E
In 1962 Mandela was arrested, convicted of conspiracy to overthrow the government and sentenced to life imprisonment. He spent the next 18 years on Robben Island where conditions were extremely harsh; yet he never gave up. During the day, the prisoners had to break rocks. At night, Mandela studied law ³ **and** Afrikaans, hoping to win Afrikaner people over to his cause.

3 Find the sentences with the word **and** in bold in paragraphs C, D and E. Rewrite them with the expressions in brackets.

- 1 (as well as) _____
- 2 (not only) _____
- 3 (along with) _____

4 Look at the *Writing Reference* on page 115. Choose a person you'd like to write a profile about. The person can be dead or alive, famous or just someone you know. Write about:

- the person and say why you admire them
- their early life
- their achievements
- the end of their life, or what they are doing now

Reminder

- Use past tenses to tell the story of their life.
- Use the present perfect simple if the person is still alive to talk about their achievements.

Review Units 1-3

VOCABULARY

1 Complete the sentence pairs with the correct words.

1 make / do

- A You shouldn't worry so much about your exams; just _____ your best.
B Before doing the shopping, it's always useful to _____ a list.

2 his own / himself

- A My brother doesn't like team sports, he prefers running by _____.
B Last summer he went travelling around Europe on _____.

3 embarrassed / embarrassing

- A I was so _____ when I watched my dad trying to dance hip-hop.
B It's _____ when you can't remember someone's name.

4 caused trouble / had trouble

- A We _____ parking the car because there were very few suitable spaces.
B Strong winds and torrential rains _____ for motorists last night.

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

achievement demonstration exposure memory
overthrown riots setbacks transition

- The expedition suffered several serious _____, including equipment breaking down, and adverse weather.
- The President was _____ by a military coup.
- When I reached the summit, I felt an incredible sense of _____.
- After the revolution, the country was ruled by a _____ government for the first year.
- When the survivors were found by rescuers they were all suffering from _____.
- _____ broke out after police officers arrested several local youngsters for vandalism.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Working as a nurse must be very _____ (stress).
- The average _____ (high) of basketball players is 1.80m.
- Workers who have to carry out the same tasks every day often complain of _____ (bored).
- The views were extremely _____ (impress).
- He works as an _____ (economy) for a multinational company.

GRAMMAR

4 Tick the correct sentences and rewrite the incorrect sentences so that they are correct.

- You haven't to wear a uniform to work in an office.
- You mustn't make any noise when going upstairs; the children are sleeping.
- Play music is a great way to relax.
- Despite of his talent, he never became famous.
- That film isn't worth see; it's really boring.
- In spite of the traffic, we managed to get there on time.

5 Complete the sentences with the past simple / continuous, past perfect simple / continuous or present perfect simple / continuous of the verb in brackets.

- Sally _____ (feel) nervous for days. She _____ (always hate) flying and she _____ (not look) forward to the long flight across the Atlantic.
- _____ (you ever eat) snails? I _____ (try) some last year when my parents _____ (take) me to France. They were delicious!
- By the time their parents _____ (get up), the two boys _____ (already watch) three videos.
- I _____ (work) for four hours now, but I _____ (only write) one page of my essay.
- The rivers are running high because the snow on the mountains _____ (melt) for weeks. It _____ (start) melting last month.

6 Connect the sentences using relative clauses and commas where necessary. More than one answer may be possible.

- Isak Dinesen was a famous writer. The author's real name was Karen Blixen.

- My car broke down. I arrived late for my interview.

- A waiter served me my food. He was very polite.

- She has lots of shoes. She doesn't wear most of them.

- I have two uncles and three aunts. They all live in Australia.

- The coast of Croatia is beautiful. We went there last year.

REVIEW CHECK

7 Complete the text with the correct words (A, B, C or D).



Ellen Johnson Sirleaf is the 24th President of Liberia and the first ¹ female head of state in Africa. She was invested as President in 2006 and has ruled the country ² seven and a half years now.

Following a ten-year stay in the USA, ³ she studied Accounting, Economics and Administration, Sirleaf returned home and worked for President Tolbert's government, as Assistant Minister and Minister of Finance.

After rebels ⁴ President Tolbert during a coup, Sirleaf fled the country. She moved to Washington DC ⁵ for the World Bank. In 1992, Sirleaf joined the United Nations where she investigated the ⁶ conflict in Rwanda, and the global effects wars ⁷ on women at the time.

In 2011, four days before the campaign in ⁸ she was re-elected, Sirleaf was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize, in ⁹ of her work for women's safety and rights.

Influential magazines, like Time and Newsweek ¹⁰ Sirleaf as one of the most powerful female leaders in the world.

- | | | | | |
|----|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1 | A elected | B chosen | C voted | D selected |
| 2 | A since | B for | C during | D meanwhile |
| 3 | A while | B when | C where | D which |
| 4 | A assassinated | B have assassinated | C assassinating | D had been assassinated |
| 5 | A for work | B for working | C working | D to work |
| 6 | A indigenous | B ethnic | C native | D traditional |
| 7 | A had having | B were having | C had had | D have had |
| 8 | A where | B which | C that | D who |
| 9 | A recognized | B recognizing | C recognize | D recognition |
| 10 | A have been listing | B were listing | C have listed | D has listed |

Video

The Maori



BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 Read the introduction and the questions in NOW WATCH.

Introduction

The Maori are the indigenous population of New Zealand. They are a Polynesian people whose culture has a significant influence on modern New Zealand society.

NOW WATCH

2 Answer the questions.

- When and how did the Maori arrive in New Zealand?
- What factors might have contributed to creating a warrior culture among the Maori?
- What is the 'haka'?
- What other Maori traditions are mentioned?
- What is the 'hongi'?

3 Match words and phrases 1–5 from the video with definitions A–E.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 warrior | A objects used for fighting, e.g. guns |
| 2 weapons | B a large meal, usually as a celebration |
| 3 ancestors | C art made by cutting into wood or stone |
| 4 carvings | D someone who is skilled at fighting |
| 5 feast | E relatives from generations ago |

FOLLOW UP

4 Go online and find out about the Maori. Write an interesting fact to share with your class.

Did you know that ...?

READING

- 1 Scan the text and write the three inventions mentioned.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____

3 inventions that might save your life



1 Most of us associate bar codes with supermarkets where cashiers scan the products we're buying and tell us the price. What is less well known is that bar codes are also used in many other places and for other purposes. For instance, hospitals have started using them in patients' wristbands.

Whenever patients are treated anywhere in the hospital, the wristband is scanned in order to show their medical records. This way, the risk of any patient receiving the wrong medication or treatment is considerably reduced.



2 Around 15 million babies are born prematurely throughout the world every year. Up to one-fifth die and many others suffer serious health problems. Simply by keeping them warm, many deaths and illnesses can be avoided. Whereas incubators cost as much as \$20,000 and

need electricity to work, an American NGO called Embrace has developed a low cost infant warmer at a tiny fraction of this price (1%). It can work with electricity or run off a generator, and heats up a miniature sleeping bag made of a special material that maintains a constant temperature for up to 6 hours, thus keeping the baby's body temperature stable and raising their chances of survival.



3 Given the country's experience with devastating earthquakes, it isn't surprising that a company in Japan has designed a quake-resistant bed that can shelter its occupants from up to 60 tonnes of falling debris. The bed is made of very strong wood from 30- to 40-year-old trees that is

reinforced with metal, and it has an overhead canopy. Starting from \$5,600, it isn't exactly cheap. But taking into account the amount of time people spend in bed, it may well save a lot of lives, as well as helping lots of people sleep more peacefully. And surely that's worth the money.

- 2 Read the text again and circle T (true) or F (false) in sentences 1–6. Rewrite the false sentences to make them true.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1 Hospitals have increased the use of scanners in patients' treatment. | T / F |
| 2 Patients are given special bracelets with background information about their illness. | T / F |
| 3 About five million premature babies die every year. | T / F |
| 4 Many of these babies could be kept alive using relatively simple technology. | T / F |
| 5 The bed protects people from things that might otherwise fall on them. | T / F |
| 6 The bed could be a good investment for Japanese people. | T / F |

- 3 Find the numbers in the text and explain who or what they refer to.

15 million _____
20,000 _____
1 _____
60 _____
30–40 _____
5,600 _____

WORD ZONE

EXTRA

More verbs which mean 'increase' or 'decrease'

- 4 Decide whether the verbs mean up ↑ or down ↓.

crash drop shoot up sink
sky-rocket plummet

- 5 Circle the correct words.

- After being hit, the plane **plummeted** / **crashed** towards the ground.
- The price of the company's shares **sank** / **sky-rocketed** after news of their latest success.
- I **dropped** / **sank** the ring into the water and walked away.
- Interest in the new car **shot up** / **crashed** after several celebrities bought one.

VOCABULARY

Surveillance

6 Which identification methods can you see in pictures A and B?



7 Match the words to the descriptions.

- 1 Closed-circuit television (CCTV) _____
- 2 Iris recognition _____
- 3 Identity card _____
- 4 Biometric information _____
- 5 Computer chip _____
- 6 Radio frequency identification (RFID) _____

- A The use of radio-frequency electromagnetic fields to identify and track tags attached to objects, animals or people.
- B The use of video cameras for surveillance.
- C This is used to identify people from physiological characteristics such as fingerprints, DNA or facial traits.
- D An electronic circuit that is one of the basic components of computers and other electronic devices, and is used to transmit data signals.
- E A type of physical identification based on the coloured part of our eyes.
- F A document that often includes a photograph and perhaps a microchip and is proof of the holder's identity.

8 Match the words from exercise 7 to their possible uses.

- 1 to locate a valuable horse that has been stolen _____
- 2 as a deterrent to shoplifters _____
- 3 to control access to buildings that contain sensitive information _____
- 4 to stop a suspect at the border _____
- 5 in household appliances, such as dishwashers _____
- 6 to validate a signature when paying by credit card _____

9 Can you think of more possible uses for the forms of surveillance in exercise 7?

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Safety & security

10 Circle the correct words. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 Police are concerned about the **security** / **safety** of the missing boy.
- 2 Children need the **security** / **safety** of a stable family life.
- 3 Airport **security** / **safety** has been tightened due to terrorist threats.
- 4 In recent years, airline companies have considerably improved their **security** / **safety** records.
- 5 Survivors of the earthquake were airlifted to **security** / **safety** by helicopters.
- 6 In these times of crisis, job **security** / **safety** can no longer be guaranteed.

11 Make expressions by completing the spider diagrams with the words in the box. Decide whether they go before or after the words in the diagrams.

belt camera food guard helmet
national net pin social top



12 Choose three expressions from exercise 11 and write sentences with them.

13 Complete the sentences with expressions A–E.

- 1 Never walk home alone at night. Remember there is ...
- 2 There was a lot of turbulence during the flight. Fortunately, in the end we all arrived ...
- 3 Even though the risk is low, the doctor recommended taking malaria tablets. She said it's ...
- 4 You shouldn't worry about your daughter's operation. The surgeon is excellent, so she'll be ...
- 5 I know you've checked the figures, but please do it one more time just to be ...

- A in safe hands.
- B safe and sound.
- C on the safe side.
- D better to be safe than sorry.
- E safety in numbers.

GRAMMAR

Uses of *will* | Conjunctions in the future

- 1 Read the exchanges. Match the examples with *will* to correct uses A–E.

- 1 Mrs Diaz: This shopping bag is so heavy!
Danni: I'll carry it for you.
- 2 Mum: Johnny, you still haven't tidied your room!
Johnny: I'll do it tonight Mum, honestly!
- 3 Dad: How's the project, Julia? Nearly finished?
Julia: Not quite, Dad. Will you give me a hand tonight?
- 4 Paula: Do you know much about climate change?
Leon: Not much, but I think the stormy weather will get worse.
- 5 Carl: I'm going for a coffee.
Louis: Great idea – I'll come with you.

- A prediction _____
- B spontaneous decision _____
- C request _____
- D promise _____
- E offer _____

- 2 Complete the predictions and match them to reasons or consequences A–E.

- 1 In ten years' time all houses will be _____ ()
- 2 In the future, we won't need _____ to get round the city. ()
- 3 I think ordinary citizens will write _____ ()
- 4 It will be easier to trace missing children, because _____ ()
- 5 As for the weather, there will _____ ()

- A The effects of global warming will become more and more apparent.
- B As soon as you walk in, your favourite music will start playing.
- C This will make the news so much more democratic.
- D We won't need to, because public transport will be free.
- E That way, the police will be able to keep track of their movements.

- 3 Respond to the statements in an appropriate way, using *will* or *won't*.

- 1 The phone is ringing.

- 2 Oh no, it's raining and I haven't brought an umbrella!

- 3 I'm thinking of going cycling this weekend – anyone interested?

- 4 We've run out of milk again.

- 5 Remember, it's a surprise – Jamie doesn't know we're organizing a party.

- 6 Are you all already there and waiting to get in? I'll be there in a minute.

- 4 Complete the sentences so that they mean the same.

- 1 I'll get home from work and then I'll send you an email.
As soon as _____
- 2 My dad gets home. Then my mum goes to bed.
Until _____
- 3 My sister finishes university in June. Then she takes a gap year.
After _____
- 4 If we don't hear from you, you won't get the job.
Unless _____
- 5 You should study hard so you don't fail the exams.
If _____

- 5 Tick the sentences that are correct and change the ones that are incorrect.

- 1 He won't be able to finish the work if you help him. _____
- 2 Unless they don't release the hostages, the police won't negotiate with the terrorists. _____
- 3 We won't have to take a taxi to the airport unless they confirm the tube strike. _____
- 4 If there won't be any cameras, the police won't be able to catch the culprits. _____
- 5 Unless they'll take more measures, the crime rate will continue to rise. _____
- 6 The exam won't start until everyone has arrived. _____

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to a radio interview with a bodyguard talking about his work. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 hunk
- 2 stand out
- 3 blend in
- 4 entourage
- 5 misconception
- 6 rely on
- 7 fend off

- A idea based on incorrect information
- B be easily seen or noticed
- C defend or protect yourself from an attacker
- D big, strong and attractive man
- E look similar to one's surroundings
- F depend on another person
- G attendants or associates who travel with an important person

- 2 Which characteristics or skills do you think a bodyguard needs? Listen and tick which are mentioned.

- 1 be tall and very muscular ☐
- 2 be in good shape ☐
- 3 know how to use weapons ☐
- 4 be able to drive ☐
- 5 be able to work in a team ☐
- 6 maintain confidentiality ☐
- 7 have good manners and be diplomatic ☐
- 8 have good observation skills ☐

- 3 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 What do we learn about Paul's appearance?
 - A He is tall and muscular.
 - B He is short and slim.
 - C He is medium-height.
- 2 Why is it important for a bodyguard to blend in?
 - A So that he can observe without being noticed.
 - B So as not to disturb the celebrity he protects.
 - C So that photographers and journalists don't notice them.

- 3 Who are Paul's clients?
 - A The majority are celebrities.
 - B All kinds of rich and influential people.
 - C Most of them are business people and politicians.

- 4 What must a bodyguard do?
 - A Keep his clients secrets.
 - B Talk to the press.
 - C Stay out of his clients' personal life.

- 5 What is said about the relationship between bodyguards?
 - A They are all very competitive.
 - B They turn their backs on each other.
 - C They cooperate and protect each other.

- 6 Why would Paul like to use a wearable computer?
 - A To notify the authorities about suspects.
 - B To facilitate the identification of suspects.
 - C To take reliable pictures of suspects.

- 7 Why is a bodyguard's job still very physical?
 - A He has to be active and in movement all day.
 - B He has to be good at martial arts.
 - C He may have to defend himself against attackers.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 How should Paul look when he's protecting a celebrity and why?

- 2 How should a bodyguard deal with high-level clients?

- 3 What does Paul say about top-level clients in a high-risk situation?

- 4 Give examples of the technology Paul mentions.

- 5 How exactly would Paul use a wearable computer?

- 6 Which two adjectives does Paul use to describe the physical condition of bodyguards?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 I'd say you're about average height and build.

- 2 People tend to think of bodyguards as big hunks.

- 3 And how do you get on with them?

READING

- 1 You are going to read an article about a small, wearable computer. Before you read, look at the pictures and try to predict what you could do with it. Then scan the text and check your ideas.

NEW WAY TO SEE THE FUTURE



Although wearable computing devices are not a completely new idea, one in particular has been attracting plenty of media attention. The Optical Head-Mounted Display (OHMD) is a tiny, wearable computer attached to what looks like a normal pair of frameless glasses. ¹ _____

Wearers can receive and reply to messages or phone calls, ask the device to translate for them, get information about transport and possible disruptions, ask for directions and be guided to the place they want to go, take pictures and record videos along the way – all without hardly ever having to take their hands out of their pockets.

Enthusiasts who have been testing this groundbreaking new technology claim that it enables them to obtain useful information without interrupting their daily lives.

² _____. On a more serious note, the 'computer glasses' could provide valuable assistance to disabled people or anybody with impaired mobility.

As with all new technologies, there are detractors as well. Any device that allows its wearers to photograph and record people without their consent, or without them being aware of it, raises questions of intimacy and privacy.

³ _____. Terrorists could employ the technology to explore the site of their next attack, while criminals could use it to obtain plans of the next bank they are planning to rob.

Apart from these extreme cases, psychologists warn that there are reasons why we should be a little wary of devices like these.

⁴ _____. Think, for instance, of the ubiquitous MP3 and MP4 players: everywhere we go, there are people plugged in to their players, oblivious of the world around them. Others have become so addicted to their mobile phones that they cannot concentrate on face-to-face conversations without simultaneously checking their messages.

As our wearable computer bombards us with all kinds of data in real time, our brain may experience information overload, which can lead to stress and anxiety.

⁵ _____. Moreover, if we become too reliant on always being updated about any situation, we run the risk of feeling insecure and out of control the moment we cannot get this information.

For the moment, we needn't worry too much.

⁶ _____. And when they do become available, will people still be comfortable viewing the world in such a different way? Well, you could say that remains to be seen ...

GLOSSARY

device	technological tool; often used in computing
optical head-mounted display	device with an optical display (lens, screen), worn as part of a helmet, visor or glasses
groundbreaking	original and innovative
impaired	disabled, or experiencing difficulties
reliant	dependent on



- 2 Read the text. What is the main point the author makes about this technology?

A It will revolutionize and improve our lives.
 B It's intrusive and potentially dangerous.
 C It'll be expensive and only for a small, exclusive minority.
 D It has great potential, but needs to be used with caution.

- 3 Read the text again and complete gaps 1–6 with sentences A–G. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use.

A Moreover, it gives rise to security concerns as well
 B It will probably be some time before such devices become readily available to consumers at an affordable price
 C The advantages for consumers far outweigh the disadvantages
 D New technologies that have been devised to enhance the way we experience reality, may end up cutting us off from real life instead
 E There are moments when we should just sit back and watch the clouds, without immediately receiving the latest weather forecast
 F They also love the fact that it captures great moments with family or friends that might otherwise have remained unrecorded, for lack of a camera or mobile phone at hand
 G The device can be controlled by pressing it, or using voice commands

- 4 Choose the correct answers.

1 The wearable computer responds to ...
 A manual orders only.
 B both manual and spoken orders.
 C the wearer's eye movements.

2 Which of these is **not** said about the device?
 A It can help you deal with foreign languages.
 B It can take photographs of everything you see.
 C It can protect your eyes from bright light.

3 What do psychologists say about the use of technology?
 A Things that are supposed to improve our lives don't always do so.
 B People waste a lot of time because they don't know how to use them.
 C People lose concentration more easily these days.

4 What is meant by *information overload*?
 A The information people receive is not uploaded properly.
 B People receive too much unnecessary information.
 C People don't always receive the latest information.

VOCABULARY

Collective & partitive nouns

- 5 For each line, cross out the word that does not go with the words in bold.

1 a **bunch of**: flowers, tissues, grapes, bananas
 2 a **slice of**: ham, pie, biscuit, bread
 3 a **packet of**: cigarettes, milk, biscuits, crisps
 4 a **bar of**: chocolate, bread, soap, gold
 5 a **flock of**: sheep, geese, flamingos, dogs
 6 a **herd of**: cattle, ants, elephants, cows
 7 a **piece of**: cheese, cake, jam, chocolate
 8 a **swarm of**: bees, wasps, seagulls, locusts
 9 a **speck of**: dust, light, mice, rain

- 6 Which of the words you crossed out in exercise 5 combine with these?

1 A loaf of _____
 2 A jar of _____
 3 A box of _____
 4 A carton of _____
 5 A pack of _____

- 7 Answer the questions, using vocabulary from exercises 5 and 6.

1 What could you give your mother on Mother's Day?

 2 A group of which insects can destroy farmers' crops?

 3 What might you get in your eye that could hurt a bit?

 4 What do you use to wash your hands?

- 8 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 4.

- 9 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the multi-part verbs from exercise 8.

1 I _____ that actor, but I don't know that much about him.
 2 They used sophisticated devices _____ the embassy staff.
 3 Thanks for your email. It was really great _____ you.
 4 I _____ the party from a friend – it sounded great.
 5 I always _____ new tracks on the radio in case I want to download them later.

GRAMMAR

Future continuous & future perfect



1 Answer the questions about the people, using future continuous and your own ideas.

- 1 Joe is a footballer. Matches are normally on Saturday afternoon at 3pm.
What will Joe be doing on Saturday at 2.30pm, at 3.30pm and at 7pm?

- 2 Carmen is an university student in Madrid.
What will she be doing on Thursday at 10am, on Saturday at 11pm and on Sunday at 11am?

- 3 Livia is the mother of a six-month old baby.
What will she be doing on Wednesday at 3pm and at 9pm, and on Thursday night at 3am?

2 How will the lives of the people below have changed this time next year? Write optimistic predictions using future perfect.

- 1 Carlos has been unemployed for six months.
This time next year, Carlos _____.
- 2 Eva is pregnant.

- 3 Liam is a law student in his final year.

- 4 Ali's band are practising a lot.

- 5 Ian and Isabella are engaged.

- 6 Peter is almost 65 and has been working for 45 years.

3 Complete the dialogues with the verbs in brackets in future perfect or future continuous.

- 1 Meg and Nico are looking at the itinerary for their honeymoon.

Meg: Just imagine Nico, this time next week we
1 _____ (not work)
— we 2 _____ (take)
photographs of wildlife!

Nico: Not on Wednesday. Our safari
3 _____ (not start)
yet. We 4 _____
(still lie) on the beaches of Zanzibar and we
5 _____ (enjoy) our
cocktails!

- 2 Mia and Robert are talking about the end of their courses.

Mia: Next Friday I 6 _____
(travel) to my parents' house in Recife.
And at lunchtime on Saturday, I
7 _____ (eat)
buchada — my mum's a great cook! And I
8 _____ (dance) in clubs
with my friends every night for the next couple of
weeks. What about you?

Robert: I 9 _____ (not go)
anywhere. I 10 _____
(stay) in Rio all summer because I have to study.
Then, hopefully, by the end of September I
11 _____ (finish) my
final project.

- 3 Jane and Phil are chatting in the office.

Jane: This is so boring! I wonder if I
12 _____ (still do) the
same work next year. What do you think, Phil?

Phil: I'm sure I 13 _____
(find) a better job by then. I
14 _____ (not write) stupid
reports for the rest of my life. By the time I'm 30, I
15 _____ (set up) my own
company and I'll be rich!

Jane: And obviously, you
16 _____ (hire) me to be
your Personal Assistant!

EXTRA CHALLENGE



昨夜雨疏風驟
綠肥紅瘦
春眠不知覺
處處啼聲
聲聲落知多少



Match arguments for and against A–H to predictions 1–4.

- In the future, people will need to eat insects because there won't be enough food for everyone.
For: ____ Against: ____
- Universities will cease to exist and all students will study online.
For: ____ Against: ____
- Chinese will overtake English as the language of international communication and commerce.
For: ____ Against: ____
- Advances in medicine will enable people to remain young and beautiful until they're 80.
For: ____ Against: ____

- Judging by the example of many celebrities, this seems highly likely.
- Why not? Globally, it's already the first language for well over a billion people.
- Fair enough – it'll be a lot more economical that way.
- There are still many diseases we'll have to eradicate beforehand.
- Rising food prices, population growth and environmental concerns make this a viable alternative.
- If you ask me, nobody would ever finish their degree.
- Although they are nutritious, they don't appeal to everyone and may take a lot of getting used to.
- It won't work – it takes too long to learn.

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- What did people watch via the first ever CCTV camera?

- Name three countries that **don't** have an identity card.

- Which 1982 film was adapted from a novel by Philip K Dick?

- Name two animals that can be found in *schools*.

- Give an example of what can be measured by *behavioural biometric technology*.

- What colour are most passports of countries in the European Union?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think Greg said? Why might he and Gary be carrying these things?



INTERACTION

Describing people and places

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- to introduce something else you saw?

- when you are not sure about something?

- when you're speculating about people?



- 2 Complete the dialogue between a police officer and a woman who witnessed a bank robbery, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

What else did you notice Could you describe them
I don't remember looking for clues make out
I can't be certain if there might have been four

Police officer: Now then madam, you were in the bank at the time. Did you witness the whole thing?

Woman: That's what I said.

Police officer: So, how many robbers were there?

Woman: I'd say at least three. No, wait a minute,
1 _____

Police officer: And what were they wearing?

Woman: The kind of clothes bank robbers usually wear: tight-fitting black trousers and tops.

Police officer: And what about their faces?
2 _____?

Woman: I couldn't 3 _____ their faces. I think they were wearing ski masks.

Police officer: Do you think they were they men or women?

Woman: 4 _____ there were any women, but at least two of them were men. They were extremely tall and muscular – they could be body builders.

Police officer: 5 _____? Any distinctive features perhaps?

Woman: I don't think so, or at least, 6 _____ any. Shouldn't the bank's security cameras have recorded all this?

Police officer: They appear to have been switched off.

Woman: Well, young man, shouldn't you be 7 _____ instead of bothering old ladies?

- 3 Find words or expressions in the dialogue that mean:

- to observe, or see something happen

- clothes that are worn close to the body

- to see clearly

- characteristics

- to disturb or trouble someone

- 4 Join the halves of the sentences.

- They left absolutely no fingerprints – whoever did this ...
- The get-away car appears to have been ...
- The police can't be certain if ...
- He might have been an accomplice ...
- He could be ...

- parked in a street nearby.
- they acted alone.
- a security guard.
- who helped them get in.
- must be a professional.

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 48 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Counter arguments

- 1 Match the arguments to the counter arguments.**
- 1 Making people take off their shoes, belts and watches takes up a lot of time.
 - 2 Storing citizens' data is an invasion of privacy.
 - 3 Freedom of speech is a universal human right.
- A** Nevertheless, if it's used to insult or bully others anonymously, the authorities should have the right to take measures.
- B** However, if it allows governments to keep track of suspected terrorists, I have no objections against it.
- C** Nevertheless, if it prevents just one terrorist from smuggling explosives on board, I think it's worth it.
- 2 Match the arguments and counter-arguments in exercise 1 to these topics.**
- 1 Everyone should have the right to be anonymous online.
 - 2 Airport security is far too strict these days.
 - 3 Biometric technology is the answer to terrorism.

... governments have a duty to take measures to protect national security ... I feel that no innocent person can ever be totally safe in a surveillance society. Overall, it is not a good idea for citizens to exchange freedom for security.

- 3 Read the essay and rewrite the first sentence in the final paragraph, using *I acknowledge* and *Nevertheless / However*.
- 4 Choose the most suitable words in bold in the essay. In which cases are both words possible?
- 5 Complete the essay with the adverbs in the box.

easily extremely simply strongly ultimately

- 6** Read the *Writing Reference* on page 116. Choose the topic you'd like to write an essay about and follow the instructions.
- Parents should monitor their children's use of the internet.
 - Companies have the right to access and read employees' emails.
 - It is acceptable for internet companies like Google to hand over user data to the government.

- 1 Use the essay on this page as a model.
- 2 Start with the essay title and then follow this plan:
Paragraph 1 – introduce the topic and say if you agree or disagree.
Paragraph 2 – give an argument explaining your position and develop it with reasons and / or examples.
Paragraph 3 – give another argument for your position.
Paragraph 4 – give an argument against your position, followed by a counter argument; conclude by stating your overall opinion.

- Give at least one argument against your position.
- Make sure your counter argument is logical.

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are approximately 20 lines visible. On the left side, there is a vertical margin line, creating a narrow left margin. The paper appears to be from a notebook or a standard ruled sheet of paper.

5 Mirror, mirror

READING

- 1 Look at the photos. Where do you think these people live and what are they famous for? Read the first paragraph of the text and check your answers.

The weirdest hairdo!



Two motorbike taxis took us up the steep and windy road that leads from Soga in south-west China to the village of Longa, in the heart of Long Horn Territory. Ever since we had seen their photos on the internet, we had been obsessed with this mysterious sub-group of the Miao ethnic minority and the striking hairstyle they are known for.

As soon as we got off the bikes, we were mobbed by a horde of women and children, dressed in the traditional costume of embroidered jackets and skirts, though it was obvious that many had jeans and sneakers on underneath. To our disappointment, none were wearing any horns, but they all offered to do their hair for us. For a fee, of course!

Each female attached a large wooden comb in the shape of a half-moon to the back of her head, with the two sides sticking out like horns. Then they began winding long, thick strands of hair around the comb, forming a figure eight, until most of it was covered. Finally, they kept the heavy mass of hair in place by tying white ribbons around it.

Originally the combs were real animal horns, and the hair came from the tribe's ancestors, but these days they use a mix of dyed hemp, wool and human hair. Whether the hair was real or not, the result was certainly eye-catching. Within minutes, all the women and girls were sporting weird-looking, top-heavy, black mounds, and they were ready to pose for us.

Although these days the Long Horns mostly put on their head-dresses for tourists, their hairdos and costumes used to be an important part of the tribe's identity. Young girls learnt to weave, make batik cloth and embroider the tribe's special patterns. Any hard-working girl who stood out in these skills would be assured of a good marriage.

Once the photo session was over, the women and girls fell on us again, clamouring for their money, but in a good-natured way. It wasn't exactly the authentic experience we had wished for, but we had to admit it was quite fun.

- 2 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1 What do we learn about the Long Horn Miao's style of dress?
 - A They still dress like their ancestors.
 - B They combine traditional and modern items.
 - C They wear traditional costumes of jackets and trousers.
 - D They wear horns in their hair.
- 2 According to the text, the Long Horn Miao show their special hairdo to tourists because ...
 - A they want to earn some money.
 - B they are proud of it.
 - C they want to teach tourists about their traditions.
 - D they like posing for photos.
- 3 What else is said about their special hairdo?
 - A It is made entirely of the hair of their forefathers.
 - B It consists of eight parts.
 - C It is a mixture of fake and real hair.
 - D It is wound around an animal horn.
- 4 In the past, young girls from the tribe ...
 - A used to work in tourism as well.
 - B were much more hard-working and skilled.
 - C wore the horn all the time.
 - D learnt dress-making skills to catch a good husband.
- 5 How do the tourists feel about their experience?
 - A It was everything they had hoped for.
 - B It was much better than they had thought.
 - C It wasn't what they expected, but they enjoyed it anyway.
 - D It was extremely disappointing.

WORD
ZONE

EXTRA

Compound adjectives with -ing

- 3 Look at the text again. Find three compound adjectives with -ing and match them to the descriptions.

- 1 with a strange appearance _____
- 2 spectacular and striking _____
- 3 the opposite of lazy _____

- 4 Answer the question with your own opinion.

Is it acceptable for tourists to pay local people to dress up and take their photo? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Medicine & surgery

- 5 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in the box.

cure inject needle recover
reduce remove surgery treat

Botulinum toxin (or Botox™) ¹ _____ have been used in cosmetic procedures since 2002. They work by weakening or paralyzing certain facial muscles, which leads to the temporary ² _____ of wrinkles. The big advantage of Botox is that no ³ _____ is needed and the ⁴ _____ time is minimal. On the negative side, users may experience loss of facial expression or feeling.

More recently, Botox has been approved for the ⁵ _____ of a number of health problems. For instance, it can alleviate chronic migraine headaches. The product is injected by ultra-fine ⁶ _____ into seven areas around the temples, forehead, neck and shoulders. Doctors believe that it works by preventing pain signals from reaching nerve endings. While it doesn't provide a permanent ⁷ _____, it can lead to a significant ⁸ _____ of symptoms such as nausea or vomiting.

- 6 Tick the sentences that are correct and change the incorrect ones.

- 1 A surgeon works in an operating circus. _____
- 2 A local anaesthetic is used to make a patient unconscious. _____
- 3 A needle is used to make an incision. _____
- 4 If you are undergoing an operation, you are the patient. _____
- 5 If you have a deep cut, you may need stitches. _____
- 6 People with very big noses may choose to have an enlargement. _____
- 7 People who choose to have a face-lift do so for medical reasons. _____
- 8 A syringe can be used to extract blood from a patient. _____

- 7 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Have you ever had stitches? What happened?

- 2 Would you ever consider having cosmetic surgery? Why / Why not?

- 3 Would you like to work as a doctor? Why / Why not?

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

The body

- 8 Match the words with parts of the body.

ankle	—	elbow	—	thigh	—
armpit	—	heel	—	throat	—
calf	—	shin	—	waist	—
chest	—	shoulder	—	wrist	—



- 9 Match the words with parts of the face.

cheek	—	eyelid	—	nostril	—
chin	—	forehead	—	temple	—
eyebrow	—	jaw	—		
eyelash	—	lip	—		

- 10 Circle the correct words.

- 1 I must have eaten something bad. I've got a terrible stomach **ache / pain**.
- 2 I felt a sharp **ache / pain** in my foot when I stepped on the piece of glass.
- 3 My skin **aches / hurts** where I burnt it.
- 4 I **hurt / ached** my back when I tried to lift that heavy box.
- 5 Elderly people usually suffer from different aches and **pains / hurts**.
- 6 My mum regularly has headaches and the **pain / hurt** can last for hours.

- 11 Complete the rules with **ache / pain / hurt**.

- 1 We can use the verb _____ to indicate that we feel pain in some part of our body.
- 2 The verb _____ is used more for a continuous, dull pain.
- 3 The word _____ is only a noun and not a verb.
- 4 The verb _____ can be used with a direct object.
- 5 The word _____ is often used as a noun in combination with various parts of the body.

1 Answer the questions using the second conditional.

How would life be different if ...

1 we didn't have laptops or tablets?

If we didn't _____.

2 there weren't any universities?

If there _____.

3 we didn't use money?

If _____.

4 everyone lived to a hundred?

_____.

5 no-one had to work?

_____.

6 you went to live abroad?

_____.

2 Read the story and write five sentences about things that would / could / might have happened if the situation had been different. Use the third conditional.

1 If Arthur hadn't _____.

2 _____.

3 _____.

4 _____.

5 _____.



Arthur was very good at science, so he decided to study medicine. He finished his degree with brilliant marks and went on to become a surgeon. One summer, while he was doing some voluntary work in Africa, he witnessed a terrible accident. A bus crashed into a big lorry and both vehicles caught fire. Police officers, firemen and volunteers all rushed to the scene. Arthur went to help as well. He saw a young woman who was trapped underneath the bus and he managed to pull her out. The woman was alive, but her skin had been badly burnt.

Arthur paid for her transport to the hospital where he was working and personally operated on her, repairing the damage to her skin. Once the young lady, whose name was Felice, had recovered, she and Arthur got married!

3 Choose the correct answers.

1 If my parents hadn't met, I _____.

A wouldn't have been born

C didn't born

B wouldn't born

D wasn't born

2 Unless they _____ me a lot of money,

I wouldn't go there.

A would pay

C paid

B didn't pay

D had paid

3 If my father was offered the job, he _____ it.

A will take

C might take

B might have taken

D took

4 If the plane _____ delayed, I wouldn't have missed my connection.

A wouldn't be

C had been

B wouldn't have been

D hadn't been

5 I would still have a good time, even if it _____ during the holidays.

A had rained

C would rain

B rained

D might rain

6 I'm not sure what I would do with the money.

I _____ travelling.

A would have gone

C would go

B might go

D could

4 Tick the correct sentences and change the incorrect ones.

1 When Toni got to the class, the exam already started. _____

2 I wouldn't take another job unless it was better paid. _____

3 The mountaineers might survive if they had been found earlier. _____

4 Unless he didn't tell me himself, I wouldn't believe it. _____

5 If I were you, I wouldn't drink that water. It looks dirty. _____

6 I would panic if I got stuck in a lift. _____

7 If I had able to study something different, I would have studied law. _____

8 If she had knew he was coming to the party, she would have stayed at home. _____

9 The plane could have crashed if the pilot hadn't reacted so quickly. _____

10 If the weather would be nice, I might go to the beach. _____

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to a radio phone-in. Four people ask Dr Flo's advice on different health and beauty matters. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

1 crutch	—	5 dye	—
2 drip	—	6 harmful	—
3 gland	—	7 tacky	—
4 straggly	—	8 break down	—

- A growing thinly and in an irregular way
 B damaging to your health
 C in bad taste
 D change the colour of something, like hair
 E long stick that helps you walk after you've hurt your leg or foot
 F an organ that produces a substance that is used by the body
 G produce drops of liquid
 H divide into small pieces that can be eliminated more easily

- 2 Listen and match the four callers to problems A-D.

Caller 1	A Hair
Caller 2	B Sweat
Caller 3	C Arthritis
Caller 4	D Tattoo

- 3 Listen again and choose the correct answer.

- 1 Caller 1 is ...
 A anxious about the procedure his grandmother has to undergo.
 B concerned about his grandfather's operation.
 C worried about his grandmother who can't walk.
- 2 Dr Flo replies that ...
 A the operation is risky but quite common.
 B younger people than his grandmother have had the same operation.
 C the operation is a routine procedure.

- 3 Caller 2 believes that his problem ...
 A is related to hygiene.
 B makes people look down on him.
 C is bad for his professional image.
- 4 Dr Flo tells caller 2 about ...
 A a treatment that can cure him.
 B a treatment that can suppress the sweating for a while.
 C a treatment that is temporary, but quite economical.
- 5 Caller 3 has problems with her hair because ...
 A she has a lack of vitamins.
 B she uses the wrong shampoo.
 C she has changed the colour too often.
- 6 Dr Flo's initial solution doesn't convince caller 3 because ...
 A it'll take too long.
 B she wants to continue using her hairdryer.
 C she doesn't like natural products.
- 7 Caller 4 thinks his problem is ...
 A a bit unusual.
 B fairly common.
 C highly embarrassing.
- 8 Dr Flo's first reaction indicates that ...
 A people often regret getting a tattoo with the name of a boyfriend / girlfriend.
 B the problem can be solved quite easily.
 C people should think more carefully before getting a tattoo.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What does the grandmother of caller 1 need?

- 2 What is the profession of caller 2?

- 3 What's the name of the treatment Dr Flo recommends for caller 2 and how is it administered?

- 4 Why is caller 3 so worried about her hair?

- 5 What does the girlfriend of caller 4 think of tattoos?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 I've got a bit of a problem. It's quite embarrassing actually.

- 2 Never mind the cost.

- 3 It turns out my girlfriend hates tattoos.

READING

- 1 Look at the title of the text and the eight photos. Try to guess how the photos are connected and group them into four pairs.

A hairy business

Read on and find out just how versatile and lucrative hair can be.

A We're all familiar with the image of a rider on horseback, wearing one of those broad-brimmed hats, known as cowboy hats or *sombreros* in Spanish-speaking countries. Well-known as the hats are, if someone asked us what they're made of, we would probably get it wrong. The best-quality cowboy hats are made of felt, a material that looks and feels like woollen fabric, though smoother and tougher. Felt is actually made of animal hair, in particular rabbit hair, which apparently never deteriorates. Besides being strong, it's also an extremely light and resilient material. Most importantly, it's much more water-resistant than other materials like wool, because the animal fibres interlock very closely and don't absorb moisture.

B Aptly described by the Chinese as 'hairy cows', yaks are cattle-like animals similar to oxen which mainly live in high-altitude Tibetan areas. They're covered in a thick mat of black and white hair, with long horns and a hairy tail. Yaks are vital to the Tibetan herders' survival: they can be ridden, used to carry goods, and

they provide meat, hair and fur. The hair from their soft undercoat is spun into wool for sweaters, or turned into felt for boots, bags, blankets and tents. In China, white yak hair is used in wigs and beards for traditional opera, while the white tips of tails are popular as ornamental tassels. In the United States, yak hair was used for Santa Claus beards.

C Human hair is big business these days. Customers in the West crave long hair for wigs and hair extensions, while Chinese companies need hair to extract amino acids. Most of this hair is exported from India. Traditionally, Indian women have very long hair. According to importers, Indian hair is also the strongest, glossiest and most beautiful. A large percentage comes from temples, where it is customary and auspicious for pilgrims to have their heads shaved; hence, the name 'Temple Hair'. Some 18 million devotees visit the southern temple of Venkateshwara

every year, which is more than Mecca or Rome. They leave behind over 75 tonnes of hair, which can fetch up to £4 million for the temple's charities.

D Many people were shocked by the recent discovery of traces of horsemeat in different food products. Culturally, many Westerners are put off by the thought of eating horses, which are seen as domestic animals for riding and other forms of recreation. However, horses have always had other uses. Horse hair – the long, coarse hair of horses' tails and manes – is still widely used for brushes for painting anything from walls to pictures for art galleries or calligraphy. Horsehair brushes are smooth and can soak up a lot of paint, enabling the painter to continue working for longer. Other common applications of horsehair are in violin bows and string instruments, or even fishing lines.



GLOSSARY

resilient	strong but flexible; able to return to its original shape
spin	convert wool, cotton or silk into thread for making cloth
crave	have a strong desire for
fetch	sell for a particular price
soak up	absorb liquid

VOCABULARY

Expressions with *get*

2 Read the text quickly and check your ideas for exercise 1.

3 Put the headings in the correct places in the text.

- 1 From rabbit to hat
- 2 An artist's friend
- 3 Auspicious hair
- 4 Tibetan lifesavers

4 Match the questions to paragraphs A-D.

Which paragraph mentions ...

- 1 a Western traditional celebration? —
- 2 a product that can be used in industry? —
- 3 a material that is quite waterproof? —
- 4 a surprising find? —
- 5 a religious custom? —
- 6 a material that is often mistaken for something else? —
- 7 something of interest to musicians? —
- 8 special uses of a particular colour? —
- 9 a material that can provide shelter? —
- 10 a profitable business? —

5 Tick the sentences that are true and correct the false ones.

- 1 Nowadays, cowboy hats are exclusively made of felt. —
- 2 Wool is stronger but less water-resistant than felt. —
- 3 Yaks are related to the animal family that includes cows and bulls. —
- 4 Yaks are mostly kept for their hair. —
- 5 The Venkateshwara Temple is almost as popular as Rome or Mecca. —
- 6 Indian pilgrims sell their hair to the temple. —
- 7 Horsehair brushes are only used by artists. —
- 8 With horsehair brushes, painters needn't interrupt their work so often. —

6 The adjectives *smooth*, *tough*, *glossy* and *coarse* are used in the text to describe hair. Cross out the words they cannot be combined with.

- 1 smooth: skin, sea, cactus, landing, transition
- 2 tough: guy, skin, pillow, meat, situation
- 3 glossy: magazine, sand, photo, boots, brochure
- 4 coarse: hands, skin, material, manners, water

7 Complete the questions with the correct form of *get* and answer them.

- 1 Do you need a lot of time _____ ready in the morning?

- 2 How long does it take you _____ to school?

- 3 When was the last time you _____ really angry? What happened?

- 4 What's a good website for _____ presents?

- 5 Do you ever have to _____ lunch or dinner for your family?

- 6 Can you think of any problems in your country that are _____ better? Or worse?

8 Match the sentences from exercise 7 to the correct meaning of *get*.

- 1 become _____
- 2 arrive _____
- 3 buy _____
- 4 make _____

9 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 5.

10 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs from exercise 9.

I've got a twin sister and, like most identical twins, we really ¹ _____ each other. But apart from our appearance, we're very different.

I ² _____ my father – we're both very quiet and a bit shy. But not my sister! She just loves

³ _____ and be the centre of attention.

I don't think I could

⁴ _____ that.

She's also really into clothes. Personally, I think some of her outfits are a bit outrageous. I prefer to wear jeans, like most other teenagers, and just ⁵ _____ with the crowd.



GRAMMAR

Expressing regret | Third conditional inversion

- 1 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from the box in the past simple.

can earn not be know speak

- I wish I _____ so short. Then I'd be better at basketball.
- If only I _____ French! I'd be able to understand the films without subtitles.
- I wish I _____ more money, so I could buy a house.
- If only I _____ how to dance! Then I could impress my friends at the party.
- I wish I _____ take a gap year to travel around the world.

- 2 What do these people regret? Write a sentence about each picture, using the past perfect.



- 1 He wishes _____.



- 2 She wishes _____.



- 3 They wish _____.



- 4 She wishes _____.



- 5 They wish _____.

- 3 How would you like these people or situations to change? Write sentences with *wish* + *would* / *wouldn't* + infinitive.

- My little brother is always taking my tablet.

- My sister never stops talking and I can't concentrate.

- My dad keeps telling me to tidy my room.

- It's been raining for three days and I'm fed up with it.

- I really like one of the girls in my history class, but she never speaks to me.

- 4 Join the pairs of sentences, using the third conditional.

- The company took no measures. It went bankrupt.

- The police let the terrorist go. He blew up a building.

- I didn't set my alarm clock. I overslept.

- He didn't wear a suit to the interview. He made a poor impression.

- The government didn't warn residents about the storm. They didn't evacuate their houses.

- 5 Rewrite the third conditional sentences from exercise 4 using inversion.

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- I wish your dad _____ (stop) smoking.
- If only I _____ (not have to) work this weekend.
- If only we _____ (know) it was going to snow.
- I wish you _____ (take) your mobile.
- Juan wishes he _____ (not get) that tattoo.
- If only we _____ (not paint) the room that horrible colour.
- Mike wishes his wife _____ (not spend) so much on clothes.
- I wish my friend Tatiana _____ (find) a job.

- 7 Complete the sentences about you.

- I wish I were just a little _____, then I _____.
- If I hadn't _____, then _____.
- If only I had _____ at the party.
- Had my parents known _____, they would _____.
- I wish my friends wouldn't always _____.

Match the beginnings of fairy tales 1–4 to endings A–D.

EXTRA CHALLENGE

- 1 *This heroine's father remarries and her cruel stepmother treats her like a servant. A fairy godmother comes to the rescue and sends her to the prince's ball in a splendid dress and carriage. She must leave before midnight, when the spell ends. Rushing out, she loses a slipper.*
- 2 *This poor girl is locked up in a tower by a witch. Whenever the witch visits her, she lets down her beautiful, golden hair for the witch to climb up. One day, a prince watches the scene and climbs up too. They fall in love and the girl gets pregnant.*
- 3 *This little girl – and her brother – are abandoned in the forest by their father, because their terrible stepmother insists they are too poor to feed them. Starving, they are lured into a witch's house, made of sweets.*
- 4 *This heroine is left to die in the woods on her jealous stepmother's orders. She is taken in by seven friendly dwarfs, but the stepmother's magic mirror tells her that the girl is still alive.*

- A *The witch plans to eat them, but the smart little girl manages to kill her by pushing her into the oven. After their escape, they are reunited with their father.*
- B *Disguised as an old woman, she feeds the girl a poisoned apple that makes her unconscious. She is found by a prince who kisses her, dislodging the apple from her throat and waking her up.*
- C *The prince picks it up and tries it on every woman in the country. When he finally finds his love, they get married.*
- D *When the witch finds out, she banishes the girl to a desert and blinds the prince. Obviously, after a lot of suffering, they are reunited.*

Now match the heroines (Snow White, Rapunzel, Cinderella and Gretel) to the fairy tales. What are the fairy tales called in your language?

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 Which country has the highest number of organ donors?

- 2 The pop singer Lady Gaga has a quote by which German poet tattooed on her arm?

- 3 Find four types of dangers that prowl the dark forests in the Grimm's fairy tales.

- 4 Which fairy tale is *Tangled*, the 2010 Disney film, an adaptation of?

- 5 Which English writer did Hans Christian Andersen stay with for five weeks in 1857?

- 6 Who is 'The World's Most Pierced Woman'?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What do you think these expressions mean? Check in a dictionary.

to cramp someone's style

to be born yesterday



INTERACTION

Resolving a conflict


- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you are very surprised by someone's actions?

 - when you refuse someone permission to do something?

 - to convince someone that something isn't important?

- 2  Ricardo is trying to persuade his parents to let him go to a concert. Complete the conversation with words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

no way in the world fit in That's a bit rich
no big deal What's the world coming to
very surprised go on to get upset



Ricardo: Mum, Dad, can I ask you something?

Mum: Sure, ¹ _____.

Ricardo: Can I go to a concert this weekend?

Dad: What kind of concert?

Ricardo: The heavy metal one that's on at the park.

Dad: No, sorry. There's ² _____.
I'll allow you to go there. There are always lots of drugs at those events, and people getting drunk and aggressive ...

Mum: ³ _____, coming from you. You're always playing those old rock vinyls of yours.

Dad: That's different. We're talking real music there, not some infernal noise.

Ricardo: Oh Dad, keep your shirt on! Everybody in my class is going. A concert is ⁴ _____.
Why do I always have to be the odd one out?
No wonder I don't ⁵ _____!

Mum: Let's try to talk about this calmly, Ricardo. There's no need ⁶ _____. What about Mandy – that nice girl you've been seeing?

Ricardo: She's going too.

Mum: Really? I'm ⁷ _____ to hear that. And what do her parents think about it? Aren't they concerned?

Ricardo: Concerned? They are playing at the concert! They're one of the main acts.

Dad: Good heavens. ⁸ _____?

- 3 Find words or expressions in the conversation that mean:

- that someone's being hypocritical

- continue

- dating someone

- become emotional or offended


- a group of performers or musicians

- a person who is different from the rest of the group

- 4 What does the expression *Keep your shirt on* mean?

- A Don't get undressed.
B Calm down – don't get angry
C Don't interrupt.

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5  Revise the *Express Yourself* box on page 68 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

WRITING

A for and against essay

WRITING SKILL

Tentative language

- 1 Rewrite the statements to make them sound more tentative, using *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *possible*, *potential*. Choose a different word each time.

- 1 Actors who are attractive will get more roles.
- 2 Bad weather conditions have been mentioned as the cause of the accident.
- 3 Employment opportunities won't improve until economic conditions get better.
- 4 Ageing nuclear power plants are a danger to public safety.
- 5 The use of pesticides leads to the destruction of wildlife.

- 2 Read the essay and circle the correct words in bold to make it more tentative.

Is it a good idea for teenagers to have plastic surgery?



Every year, more and more teenagers decide to have plastic surgery. Some of the most popular procedures include nose jobs, the correction of protruding ears, laser eye surgery or the removal of scars caused by acne or injuries.

Many look to plastic surgery as an easy way to improve their appearance and fit in. This is **possibly / certainly** because young people **will be / can be** very cruel: they **may / must** laugh or joke about the size or shape of someone's nose without a moment's thought of that person's feelings.

_____ , some teenagers have started thinking their lives will be much better if their noses, ears, skin, etc. are different.

¹ _____, teenagers shouldn't underestimate the **potential / probable** complications or infections involved in any operation. ² _____, they should realize that

surgery alone **might not / could not** solve their problems. Teenagers who feel insecure about the way they look, or who are being bullied at school, won't become popular overnight just because their ears have been pinned back.

_____ , not all teenagers who are unhappy about their looks need to go in for an operation. There **might be / have to be** other solutions, like skincare, cosmetic or clothing advice. As I see it, teenagers should only have plastic surgery if they are convinced it will increase their self-confidence and make them feel better. However, they ought to make their own decisions, without pressure from family or friends.

_____ , they should make sure the surgeon is highly qualified and experienced.

- 3 Complete gaps 1–5 in the essay with the expressions in the box.

Even so Furthermore Not surprisingly
Last but not least Obviously

- 4** Read the *Writing Reference* on page 117. Your teacher has asked you to write a for and against essay about one of the topics below. Choose the topic you would like to write about and follow the instructions.
- Do people spend too much time and money on their appearance?
 - Should people have plastic surgery in order to stay looking young?
 - Is it acceptable for people to have plastic surgery, even if there is nothing wrong with their appearance at all?
- 1 Use the essay on this page as a model.
 - 2 Start with the essay title and then follow this plan:
 - Paragraph 1 – introduce the topic.
 - Paragraph 2 – give some arguments for.
 - Paragraph 3 – give some arguments against.
 - Paragraph 4 – conclude with your own idea: are you for or against the topic discussed?

Reminder

- Use some tentative language where appropriate.
- Use suitable linking words to add and contrast information, or to express an opinion.

READING

- 1 Read the title and first paragraph of the article. Then put the rest of the paragraphs in order.

Don't get caught!

- 1 Most internet users will have received unexpected emails from banks or retailers. Typically, these emails inform you that there has been a problem with your account, credit card, or the payment for an order you have placed. They may even frighten you by saying your bank account has been hacked into. Others claim that the company has had technical problems, or is updating its computer system.



- Secondly, although these emails are sent out randomly, they may be received by people who have an account with that bank, or just bought something from the site mentioned, so they believe them to be genuine.
- Unfortunately, what many people don't realize is that these are false links that redirect you to a website set up by scammers. These unscrupulous crooks now have access to your personal data and can use it to empty your bank account.
- Whatever the reason given, you are then asked to re-confirm your identity and provide personal details. For this, you are directed to a link at the bottom of the email, requested to click on it and type in your ID and password.
- What can people do to protect themselves? Treat all unknown emails with caution and read the link address carefully. If you are still in doubt, a quick phone call to the bank or retailer can save you a lot of grief.
- Is there any way users can know a link is fake? Fortunately there is, though you'd hardly notice the difference if you hadn't been warned. Whereas the beginning of a genuine address reads <https://>, phishing links just have <http://> without the final s.
- This means that you have fallen victim to *phishing* – an alternative spelling for 'fishing'. In other words, you have taken the bait – the email – and been caught. The ph spelling may have been inspired by the term phreaking, which is used for telephone hacking.
- Why are people taken in by these scams? Firstly, such emails can look extremely realistic, imitating company logos and colours. Big company names such as Citibank, eBay or PayPal have all been used in this way. Scammers try very hard to make their work look authentic.

- 2 Answer the questions in your own words.

- 1 Name three reasons scammers give for contacting people.
- 2 How can scammers get hold of your personal data?
- 3 Can you explain why this scam is compared to going fishing?
- 4 What's the difference between a fake and an authentic link address?
- 5 Which two reasons are given why people fall for these scams?
- 6 What should you do if you receive a suspicious email?

WORD ZONE
EXTRA

Uses of adverbs

- 3 Compare these two sentences from the text. Are the words in **bold** adjectives or adverbs? Link them to the correct meaning below.

- 1 You'd **hardly** notice the difference if you hadn't been warned.
- 2 Scammers try **very hard** to make their work look authentic.

very much —
almost not —

- 4 Find eight more adverbs that end in *-ly* in the article.

- 5 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Have you ever received phishing emails?
- 2 Do you know anyone who has been a victim of a phishing scam?
- 3 What do you do to protect your computer and your data?

VOCABULARY

Connection problems



6 Match the words in bold to explanations A–K.

- 1 My files have been **deleted** and I've lost all my work. —
- 2 You can **top up** your mobile online, or from a cashpoint. —
- 3 Help! I think my computer's got a **virus**. —
- 4 If you **can't get a signal** when you're having an emergency, you're really in trouble. —
- 5 Some of my files have become **corrupted** and I can't open them. —
- 6 My DVD is **frozen** on an image and I can't get it to work. —
- 7 I can't **access** my email. —
- 8 I've recently updated my MP3 player and now it won't **sync** my music. —
- 9 I was trying to watch a programme online, but it keeps **buffering**. —
- 10 Our network has been **hacked into** and our data has been altered. —

- A erased; eliminated
 B get into
 C containing an error so it doesn't work properly any more
 D blocked; not moving
 E automatically transfer songs from a computer library to an MP3 player
 F have poor or no reception
 G entered illegally
 H put more money into
 I temporary delays in the transmission
 J a software programme that interferes with the working of a computer

7 Cross out the words that cannot be used before or after the words in bold.

- 1 **delete**: a photo, a paragraph, a credit card, a file
- 2 **top up**: your phone, your computer, your glass, the petrol (in your car)
- 3 **infect**: a wound, water, a laptop, a phone
- 4 **freeze**: water, an image, prices, a file
- 5 **access**: a building, a letter, a university, an account
- 6 **signal**: phone, hand, smoke, ear

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Telephones

8 Do the quiz. Then check your answers at the bottom of the page.



- 1 The telephone was invented by _____ in 1876 / 1922 / 1789.
- 2 Before mobile phones, most people had a fixed line in their home, called a _____.
- 3 Mobile phones were first introduced to the public in 1951 / 1973 / 1964. At that time, they weighed ½ kg / 1 kg / 2 kg.
- 4 The US name for a mobile phone is a _____.
- 5 A mobile phone that you don't need to hold is a _____ phone.
- 6 What's the sound your phone makes when someone calls you? _____
- 7 Which multi-part verbs mean the following:
 - A to answer a call _____
 - B to finish a call _____
 - C to wait (2 verbs) _____ / _____
 - D to connect someone _____
 - E to be able to make contact with someone _____
 - F to be disconnected suddenly _____
 - G to return a call (3 verbs) _____ / _____ / _____
 - H to have a bad line; be disrupted _____
 - I to talk louder _____
- 8 The line is **busy** is the same as the line is _____.
- 9 If you often phone the same numbers, you can program a quicker way of calling them by using the _____ function.
- 10 Which of these is not a correct way to answer the phone? Cross it out.
 This is Sandra. / My name is Sandra. / I am Sandra. / Sandra speaking.

GRAMMAR

Uses of *could* | Uses of *be able to*

1 Match the sentences to functions A–E.

- Could I check my email on your computer? —
- My son could read when he was three years old. —
- Could you help me set up my blog? —
- If you buy a new laptop in the sales, you could save 30%. —
- When I was a child, I could play outside whenever I wanted. —

- A Making a request
B Past ability
C Past possibility
D Asking for permission
E Present or future possibility

2 Ask for permission or make a suitable request for each situation.

- It's really hot in the classroom. What do you ask your teacher?

- You left your wallet at home, so you haven't got money for a sandwich. What do you ask your friend?

- You don't think you'll be able to finish your essay on time.

- You want to know what time the last train leaves.

3 Circle the correct words.

- The fire destroyed the building, but fortunately everybody **could** / **was able to** escape.
- When Tom was little, he **was able to** / **could** run faster than anybody.
- Ferrer played very well, but in the end Nadal **was able to** / **could** beat him.
- The police officer chased the pickpocket, but unfortunately he **could** / **was able to** escape.
- Muhammad Ali was a great boxer – he **could** / **was able to** beat anybody!

4 Which sentences in exercise 3 refer to one particular situation in the past, and which refer to a general ability?

Particular situation: _____
General ability: _____

5 Complete the sentences about you.

- I could _____ when I was 7, but I couldn't _____.
- Once, I was able to _____, but never again after that.
- I wish I could _____ because _____.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of *be able to* and match them to A–F.

- I'm afraid I _____ come to the party on Saturday.
- Brokers need _____ work under pressure.
- We _____ book a hotel yet.
- You _____ drive if you want to work in the USA.
- I wish I _____ learn languages when I was younger.
- My granddad really enjoys _____ go for a walk whenever he wants.

- A That's precisely why I wouldn't like to be one.
B I would have liked to have gone abroad.
C The ones we contacted were all full.
D Distances between places are very far and there is very little public transport.
E That's why he prefers to live on the ground floor.
F My parents are going out and I have to look after my little brother.

7 Complete the descriptions with your own ideas.



If you want to be an artist, you must be able to _____, but you don't necessarily need to be able to _____. If you _____, you might be able to _____. The good thing about this kind of work is, you'll be able to _____, but on the other hand you won't be able to _____. Most successful artists enjoy being able to _____.




If you want to become a successful sportsperson you must be able to _____. Most sportspeople also have to be able to _____. If you _____, you might be able to _____. Only the best sportspeople will be able to _____. Many of those who were once famous have never been able to _____.

LISTENING


- 1 You are going to listen to an interview with a business consultant who talks about employees wasting time on the internet. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 loaf
- 2 be glued to
- 3 tax return
- 4 undervalued
- 5 get out of hand
- 6 ban
- 7 get the sack
- 8 fire

- A become impossible to control
- B not appreciated sufficiently
- C lose your job, be dismissed
- D be lazy or unoccupied
- E document in which you declare your income
- F dismiss
- G prohibit
- H give all your attention to

- 2  Look at the picture and try to predict some of the different ways in which people at work waste time. Listen and check your ideas.



- 3  Listen again. Complete the summary of the recording with the word(s) that you hear.

- 1 Companies are worried about a new trend, called _____.
- 2 It means that employees are _____ while at work.
- 3 They can waste up to _____ of their time doing this.
- 4 It seems that social media like Facebook and Twitter are particularly _____.
- 5 Sport is another big _____.
- 6 The problem is particularly bad among _____.
- 7 All employees surf the net _____.
- 8 To put an end to the problem, companies can ban _____ certain websites.
- 9 In the worst cases, companies can _____ a worker.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 How much money are employers losing?

- 2 How often are employees interrupted by tweets or messages?

- 3 Which sports are particularly distracting?

- 4 When do employees spend most time shopping?

- 5 How do older employees spend their time on the internet?

- 6 Name some reasons why employees cyberloaf.

- 7 How can cyberloafing be good for productivity?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 Employees across the board surf the internet looking for jobs.

- 2 But what if a company feels the situation has got out of hand?

- 3 You'd better watch out!

READING

- 1 Read the first paragraph of the text and complete the definition.

appreneur: a business person who _____

Appreneurs

appreneur (n) | *appreneurship* (abstract noun)
Origin: *app* + *entrepreneur* = *appreneur*

The newly coined term *appreneur* is all the rage in the business world today. It's a combination of the words *entrepreneur* and *application software*. Entrepreneurs are innovators who set up their own business, usually in the area of new technologies, such as applications – or apps – for mobile devices, like smartphones or tablets. Following the recent take-off of smartphones, a wide range of apps has been developed, and new ones are being launched almost every day. ¹ _____.

The most famous one is WhatsApp, the instant text messaging application. Since its launch in 2009, Whatsapp has attracted over 250 million users, the vast majority under 25, and it now handles an astonishing 10 billion messages a day. People worldwide have become addicted to Rovio's Angry Birds, which is played for an incredible 200 million minutes per day! And there are countless others. ² _____. Or apps that provide information about activities happening in people's local areas, like concerts or sports events, enabling them to meet up with like-minded people.

Many of the people behind these apps are young, in their early twenties or even in their teens. So, how do they do it? How does one become an appreneur? First of all, a prospective appreneur needs to come up with an innovative idea for an app that fills a hole in the market. ³ _____. At this stage, they will have to do some serious social networking, spreading the word on Facebook, Twitter and so on.

An important decision appreneurs have to take is whether to charge for the app, or offer it for free and make money by attracting advertising. Most successful appreneurs opt for the latter because they can draw millions of users by offering their product for free, or at a minimal cost, but far fewer if users have to pay.

⁴ _____. But it seems to work, which is the main thing.

One advantage for budding appreneurs is that they need very little investment to start up their company. ⁵ _____. On average, this development phase lasts 2–6 months. With a little luck, once an app is launched, results may be seen very quickly, with the number of users multiplying within days.

In short, appreneurship is a career opportunity for enterprising and imaginative people who lack the capital to set up a traditional company. ⁶ _____.



GLOSSARY

coin	think up, invent
rage	fashion or trend
like-minded	with similar tastes or interests
opt for	choose
budding	beginning, developing

VOCABULARY

Nouns ending in -y and their adjectives

- 2 Read the text again and complete gaps 1–6 with the correct sentences from A–G. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use.

- A Then, they need to let all their potential users know about their app's existence.
- B In the future, it may well democratize the business world.
- C This novel strategy goes entirely against traditional business wisdom which teaches that the most profitable product is the one that can be sold with the highest profit margin.
- D If appreneurs are able to do their own coding, they will have hardly any costs, except what they need to get by while developing their project.
- E Some appreneurs have made lots of money from their inventions.
- F There are apps for bird watchers that reproduce the animals' sounds, luring them away from their nests and making it easier for people to spot them.
- G There are apps to suit all tastes.

- 3 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What do we learn about apps in paragraph 1?
 - A They have multiplied due to the success of the smartphone.
 - B They have really taken off in business.
 - C They are still in a developmental stage.
- 2 What do we learn about WhatsApp in paragraph 2?
 - A It has a quarter of a million users.
 - B Many people have become addicted to it.
 - C It is most popular among young people.
- 3 What is the most important thing appreneurs need to do?
 - A They need to build up a large social network.
 - B They need to obtain finance.
 - C They have to invent something that satisfies a need.
- 4 How are appreneurs different from conventional businesspeople?
 - A They prefer to charge very little and have many customers.
 - B They don't want to make money.
 - C They don't use advertising.
- 5 A second difference between appreneurs and other businesspeople is that ...
 - A the second make a lot more money.
 - B the first can develop their business with little money and time.
 - C the first are more enterprising.

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective or noun of the words in the box. There are two extra words you do not need to use.

history industry library luxury mystery popularity remedy security supply technology tendency theory

- 1 We spent our honeymoon in a _____ resort.
 - 2 Online shopping has become more and more _____.
 - 3 I used to really enjoy my _____ classes because I like finding out about the past.
 - 4 If you don't use passwords, your on-line data won't be _____.
 - 5 No _____ has been found for some of these allergies people are suffering from.
 - 6 There have been so many advances in _____ that it's hard to keep up.
 - 7 The current _____ in the political party is one of increasing radicalization.
 - 8 I think university studies should be more practical and less _____.
 - 9 Cleopatra was a _____ character about whom not much is known.
 - 10 During the _____ revolution, manufacturing expanded rapidly.
- 5 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 6.

- 6 Rewrite the sentences, using one of the multi-part verbs from exercise 5.
- 1 Bill Gates was only 20 years old when he created Microsoft.

 - 2 He managed to gain access to the company database illegally and then leaked the information to the media.

 - 3 Many people are deceived by online scams and some lose a lot of money.

 - 4 You need a password in order to enter the website.

 - 5 I won't be able to go on holiday until I've returned all the money I borrowed from the bank.

GRAMMAR

Modal perfects

1 Match the sentences.

- 1 I can't find my mobile. —
- 2 Your father **could have fixed** that computer for you. —
- 3 Pedro didn't answer my call. —
- 4 He **can't have left** the office yet. —
- 5 If you hurry up, you may still catch him. —
- 6 The burglar left without taking anything. —

- A Someone **must have stolen** it.
 B He **may have been** asleep.
 C He **must have been** disturbed.
 D He **might not have left** home yet.
 E You just had to ask him.
 F His car is still parked outside.

2 For each of the sentences in exercise 1, say what the verbs in bold mean. Choose from A–D below.

- A I'm certain it happened. 1 —
 B I'm certain it didn't happen. 2 —
 C It's possible it happened / didn't happen. 3 —
 D It was possible but didn't happen. 4 —
 5 —
 6 —

3 Complete the dialogues using modal perfects and the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 A: Don hasn't been coming to Japanese class. He _____ (give up).
 B: No way. He _____ (do) that. He's really keen on anything Japanese. He _____ (go) on holiday, or something like that.
- 2 A: I can't see Stacy and May anywhere. They _____ (leave).
 B: They _____ (step out) for some fresh air. It's hot in here.
- 3 A: We have released the suspect because he _____ (commit) the crime. He was out of the country at the time.
 B: But _____ he _____ (instruct) someone else to do it?
- 4 A: Susie is looking really smart these days. She _____ (find) a new job.
 B: There's a rumour that she _____ (win) some money in the lottery.
- 5 A: I wonder why Pat didn't come to the meeting. She _____ (forget).
 B: I can't believe that – she's very reliable. She _____ (know) about it.

4 Complete the sentences with *should / shouldn't have* and a suitable verb in the past participle. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 Allie got terribly sunburnt. She _____ on the beach for so long.
 2 Someone hacked into Petra's computer. She _____ an unknown site.
 3 Burglars broke into my neighbour's house. She _____ the windows.
 4 When we arrived, the restaurant was full. We _____ a table.
 5 When Julia got home, she discovered that the dress didn't fit. She _____ it.
 6 You _____ me if you needed help.
 7 _____ Yuto _____ that job, or not?
 8 Our car got hit by lightning. We _____ it under a tree.
- 5 Leo is a university student. His parents have come to visit him, but he is not ready and everything is still in a mess. Write sentences about what Leo should have done, using the verbs in the box.



comb empty get hang up
 make shave take down wash

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Read the examples of nuisance behaviour.

- Parents who bring young children to a restaurant and let them run wild.

- Neighbours who play loud music at all hours.
- Dog owners who don't clean up after their pets.

Put the three texts of people complaining in order and match them to the nuisances. The first lines have been done for you.

- 1 Have you got any idea just how loud that is?
 Why doesn't he go to a library instead of spoiling other people's fun? I'm having some friends round.
 My son is studying for an exam. Could you turn down the volume?
 Look, it's only 7 o'clock, so I don't see what you're complaining about.

- 3 Excuse me. Are you going to pick that up?
 Yes, I am. Look what your dog just did over there. You do realize this is a public space?
 I don't see what all the fuss is about. It's practically underneath that bush.
 Are you talking to me?

- 2 I'm sorry but your children are being very loud.
 Well, could I please ask you to stop them from running around like that?
 They're just kids. Kids are loud. What do you expect?
 Oh, they're just burning off a bit of energy. No harm in that.

Write one more line for each dialogue and try to persuade the person to change their behaviour.

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- What are you called if you a) like using new technology, and b) dislike or avoid using it?
- Find an example of a telephone scam in the news.
- What are mobile phones called in a) Israel, b) Germany and c) Japan?
- How did a mobile phone make British comedian Dom Joly famous?
- Is the term *wi-fi* an abbreviation?
- Find three charities in your country that will accept donations of old mobile phones.

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What has happened to Gary and why does he not understand Greg?



INTERACTION

Making a complaint

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you are dissatisfied with a service?
- when you want to make it clear that something is unacceptable?
- when you promise someone that you are going to take action?

- 2 Complete the exchanges between a customer and various employees of a phone company, using the words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

get back to to complain about
if that's the case understand your reaction
if you just leave it in the strongest possible terms
disgrace report the problem happy about this
good enough seems to be On behalf of

Customer services: Good morning, Top Phones International. How can I help you?

Caller: My name's Tony West. I'm calling _____ my internet connection.

Customer services: What _____ the problem, Mr West?

Caller: It's been running really slowly the last couple of days and yesterday it completely packed up.

Customer services: Did you _____ to the technical department?

Caller: Yes. I phoned them at midday and they said they'd _____ me in half an hour. Well, I'm still waiting and I'm not _____.

Customer services: I completely _____ . Let me put you through to them again, so they can sort it out.

Technical services: Technical Services, hello?

Caller: Yes, hello. Tony West here. My internet has been down since yesterday and your department still hasn't done anything about it.

Technical services: I can only apologize _____ . We'll send someone round to fix it straight away.

Caller: When can I expect them?

Technical services: They'll be there between 10 and 12.

Technical services: Technical Services, hello?

Caller: Tony West again here. Now look, it's now 2 o'clock and your technician still hasn't arrived. This is an outrage.

Technical services: _____ Top Phones International, let me repeat how sorry we are. Perhaps you'd like to arrange another visit, Mr West?

Caller: I already had an appointment! Your company is an absolute _____ . I demand that you put me through to your manager.

Manager: Hello?

Caller: I'd like to complain _____ about the service I've received, or rather not received, from your company. I've been without an internet connection for over 24 hours and I've spent all morning waiting for a technician who never came.

Manager: I'm terribly sorry to hear that. But _____ with me, I'll get back to you as soon as possible.

Caller: No thank you. This isn't _____ . As of now, I'm switching providers!

- 3 Find words or expressions in the exchanges that mean:

- organize or plan _____
- repair _____
- stop working (a machine) _____
- solve _____

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

back on through up with

- Bea isn't here. Can you call _____ later?
- Prices of plane tickets just keep going _____. They're astronomical!
- Please bear _____ me for a moment. I'll just go and get the file.
- A: Can you give me a hand with this? B: Hold _____. I'll be with you in a second.
- No, I don't want you to put me _____ again. I want to speak to the manager!

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 68 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Introducing contrasting and opposing ideas

- 1 Rewrite and/or link the sentences, using the word(s) in brackets. Make any necessary changes.**
- 1 Even though mobile phones can be useful, they can also disturb people. (in spite of)

 - 2 My friends all claim they aren't addicted. However, most of them check their phones all the time. (even though)

 - 3 I recognize that texting is much cheaper, but it is also more impersonal than calling. (although)

 - 4 I love reading. Most of my friends think it's boring. (whereas)

 - 5 Although there was a strong wind, the sailing boat left the harbour. (despite)

 - 6 Even though his friends warned him about the risks, Jim set off alone. (nevertheless)

 - 7 The sector of renewable energy is still expanding, whereas construction has declined. (on the other hand)

- 2 Complete the article with contrasting words or expressions from exercise 1.**

I'm a 25-year old university student who is fairly up-to-date with technology. I use the internet every day for my studies, keeping up with the news or for entertainment. I _____ any social networks.



that, I don't belong to

You might ask what I have against them. First of all, I value my privacy and don't want to find embarrassing photos of myself posted online.²

I understand that it was able to be fun to share photos and messages with family and friends, especially if you're abroad, I'd prefer to do it in a more personal way.

Moreover, I can't understand people who claim to have 500 friends on Facebook. It has got so bad that some youngsters only interact via the internet, ³ _____ they can't cope with face-to-face communication. In addition, most messages are so trivial. Why would I want to know my friend has gone shopping?

4 _____, I know I'm exaggerating. Using tweets and texts, activists around the world have been able to organize protests. Closer to home, my friends complain they are unable to let me know about parties or events. 5 _____, I ask them: 'What's wrong with emailing or calling me?'

all the advantages of social networks.

I remain unconvinced. I'm in no rush to join Facebook or Tuenti, ⁷ _____ my friends must be able to persuade me to join LinkedIn, once I start looking for a job.

- 3** Find and correct the five mistakes in the use of *can* / *be able to*.

Paragraph 2: _____

Paragraph 3 _____

Paragraph 4 _____

Paragraph 4 _____

Paragraph 5 _____

- 4 Read the *Writing Reference* on page 118. Write an article called *Why social networks are important to young people today*. Follow the instructions.

- 1 Use the article on this page as a model.
- 2 Divide your work into clear paragraphs, using this plan:
 - Paragraph 1 – introduce your topic.
 - Paragraphs 2 / 3 – give several advantages of using social networks.
 - Paragraph 4 – mention one or two possible disadvantages.
 - Paragraph 5 – conclusion: sum up and explain why you think social networks are important.

- Use expressions which introduce contrasting and opposing ideas.

This image shows a full page of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page, providing a template for handwriting practice. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the page.

Review Units 4-6

VOCABULARY

1 Circle the word that is the odd one out.

- 1 detect, identify, survey, recognize
- 2 plummet, soar, nose-dive, crash
- 3 bunch, jar, packet, carton
- 4 hardly, lonely, actually, kindly
- 5 spam, ring tone, password, virus

2 Complete the sentences with the correct word (A, B or C).

- 1 The farmer's fields were trampled by a _____ of cows.
- 2 Most official buildings use CCTV cameras to _____ images of all visitors.
- 3 The views from the helicopter were _____.
- 4 His family urged him to see a doctor and in the end he _____ agreed.
- 5 I haven't _____ my friend Jill for ages. I'm beginning to get worried, so I'll send her an email.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 A flock | B herd | C swarm |
| 2 A capture | B display | C spy on |
| 3 A breathless | B breathable | C breath-taking |
| 4 A reluctantly | B unfortunately | C randomly |
| 5 A heard of | B heard about | C heard from |

3 Complete the sentences with the noun form of the words in the box.

perform reconstruct recover replace

- 1 I'm afraid this TV can't be repaired; you'd better look for a _____.
- 2 Critics praised the actor's _____ as one of the best of his career.
- 3 After the floods, the government invested a lot of money in the _____ of the area.
- 4 My grandmother's _____ after the operation was slow.

4 Complete the sentences with the adjective form of the words in the box.

industry popularity psychology security

- 1 Many victims of crime suffer from _____ problems long after the event.
- 2 Many rivers have been contaminated by _____ waste.
- 3 Many people feel more _____ when there are CCTV cameras around.
- 4 This quiz has been one of the most _____ TV programmes for over ten years.

GRAMMAR

5 Complete the sentences with the conjunctions in the box.

as soon as before unless until when

- 1 Our plane leaves at 8 o'clock, so _____ we leave early, we won't get to the airport on time.
- 2 We'll have to stay here _____ the rain stops; otherwise, we'll get soaked!
- 3 Charles will meet us at the airport, so _____ we arrive, we should give him a ring.
- 4 We don't need to change any money _____ we leave; we can do it _____ we get there.

6 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 The weather is very bad, so we can't go to the beach. If the weather wasn't _____
- 2 They lost the battle and their country was invaded. If they hadn't _____
- 3 I'm not strong enough to be a professional football player. I wish I _____
- 4 If she hadn't posted that photo on social media, the school would never have found out what she'd done. Had _____

7 Complete the sentences with a form of *be able to*.

- 1 They _____ (not) find a new house yet.
- 2 You must _____ speak several languages fluently if you want to be an interpreter.
- 3 I would like _____ dance better.
- 4 I like _____ get up late at weekends.

8 Complete the sentences with a modal perfect of the verb in brackets.

- 1 It _____ (be) Esther who sent you that SMS; she lost her phone two days ago.
- 2 You _____ (eat) so many sweets earlier; it's very bad for your teeth.
- 3 A: I can't see Sally's car, isn't she coming to the party?
B: She said she was, but she _____ (decide) to take the bus.
- 4 Why didn't you tell us your car was in the garage? We _____ (give) you a lift!

9 Write sentences with the future continuous or the future perfect of the verbs in the box.

buy go see talk work

REVIEW CHECK

10 Complete the text with the correct words (A, B, C or D).

Are you a nomophobe?

Is your phone never ¹ _____? Do you spend more than three hours a day on it, check it every ten minutes, even sleep with it?

If you answered 'yes' to all these questions, you ² _____ suffering from **nomophobia**, an abbreviation for **no-mobile-phone phobia**, or the fear of being out of mobile phone contact.

In a recent ³ _____ survey in the UK nearly two thirds (66%) of mobile phone users admitted they felt anxious when they lost their phone, ran out of battery or credit, or had no network ⁴ _____. This figure was significantly higher than a previous study, showing that addiction rates had ⁵ _____.

⁶ _____, young people were the most addicted: a ⁷ _____ 77% of 18 to 24 year-olds confessed they ⁸ _____ to live without their phones. They claimed phones helped them ⁹ _____ with their friends and made them feel less lonely.

Though **nomophobia** isn't a ¹⁰ _____ condition, it can cause problems. So, next time you reach for your phone, ask yourself if you really need it!



- | | | | | |
|----|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 | A turned on | B put off | C switched on | D switched off |
| 2 | A could be | B wouldn't be | C could be able | D will be |
| 3 | A virtual | B online | C live | D connected |
| 4 | A line | B contact | C exposure | D coverage |
| 5 | A dropped | B plunged | C shot up | D declined |
| 6 | A Hardly | B Typically | C Fortunately | D Absolutely |
| 7 | A eye-catching | B nerve-shattering | C mind-blowing | D nice-sounding |
| 8 | A wouldn't be able | B mustn't | C would be able | D can't |
| 9 | A look after | B fit in | C stand out | D take after |
| 10 | A life-threatening | B long-lasting | C life-saving | D time-consuming |

Video

Rugby



BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 Read the introduction and the questions in NOW WATCH.

Introduction

Rugby Union, often referred to as simply 'rugby', is a full contact sport that started in England and is now played in over 100 countries.

NOW WATCH

2 Answer the questions.

- Who was William Webb Ellis?
- Why, according to the video, were the rules of rugby first written down?
- What differences are mentioned between rugby league and rugby union?
- What is said about rugby in Wales and New Zealand?
- What justification is given for rugby being considered 'a gentleman's game'?

3 Match words and phrases 1-5 from the video with definitions A-E.

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| 1 prestigious | A the song chosen to represent a country |
| 2 outlet | B with a good reputation |
| 3 amateur | C to try to stop a player who has the ball |
| 4 national anthem | D a way of releasing energy |
| 5 tackle | E not professional |

FOLLOW UP

4 Go online and find out about rugby. Write an interesting fact to share with your class.

Did you know that ...?

7 Crocodile man

READING

- 1 Look at the pictures and scan the first three lines of the text. Which animals does the charity work with and how do they help them?

To the rescue



Not only animals living in the wild are in danger. Many captive animals are in need of our attention as well. International animal welfare charity Four Paws rescues bears and big cats that are being kept in sub-standard zoos, used in circuses or the entertainment industry. In one of their most recent feats, in the spring of 2012, they removed a lion family, 2 adults and 2 cubs, from a zoo in Romania. The animals had been cooped up in cramped, concrete cages for years and were suffering from severe malnutrition. In a complex operation, they were introduced into crates and transported, by truck and plane, to South Africa, where they were released into Lions Rock, a big cat sanctuary run by the charity. Animal lovers around the world watched video footage of the cubs waddling out of their crate on stumpy, deformed legs – due to vitamin and mineral deficiencies – and rejoiced over their reunion with their parents. Members of the organization are confident the lions will adapt well to their new environment and that the cubs, with due care, will be able to recover from their ordeal.



A large part of Four Paws' work focuses on Eastern Europe, where awareness of animal rights is still relatively low and European Animal Welfare Standards are not always adhered to. It is estimated that there are 42 zoos in Romania alone, built during Ceausescu's Communist regime, as symbols of the country's prosperity. After 2007, when Romania joined the EU, half of these were closed to the public for failing to meet European standards. Unfortunately, their closure didn't improve the animals' lives – it just meant their plight went unnoticed. Four Paws aims to put an end to this situation, not only by physically saving as many animals as possible, but also by obliging the zoos to sign legal agreements promising not to keep large predators in captivity again.

Although their campaigns on behalf of big cats and bears have attracted most media attention, the charity's work doesn't stop there. They have been looking after stray animals all over the world for 15 years, while their specialist teams have been involved in animal relief operations in areas of extreme drought or flooding.

Four Paws is an international animal welfare charity registered in the UK and founded in Austria in 1988 to campaign against fur farms and battery-farmed eggs. The charity has been operating on an international level since 1994 and now has offices in twelve countries.

- 2 Read the text again and circle T (true) or F (false). Rewrite the false sentences below to make them true.

- 1 Four Paws wants to save all big cats from captivity. T/F
- 2 Recently, four lions were released into the wild in South Africa. T/F
- 3 Many people watched the operation in the cinema. T/F
- 4 The cubs couldn't walk very well because of malnutrition. T/F
- 5 Animal protection is now a priority in Eastern Europe. T/F
- 6 Romania's previous government created zoos as status symbols. T/F
- 7 In 2007, all Romanian zoos were closed due to lack of public funds. T/F
- 8 After the zoos were closed, the animals' living conditions remained equally poor. T/F
- 9 Four Paws intends to improve the situation by saving as many animals as possible. T/F
- 10 The charity also works with homeless animals and animals affected by natural disasters. T/F

- 3 Find these numbers in the text and say what they refer to.

2012 _____
 2007 _____
 2 _____
 15 _____
 42 _____

WORD
ZONE
EXTRA

Verbs with re-

- 4 Look at paragraph 1 of the text and find:

1 four verbs with the prefix re-

2 one noun with the prefix re-

What is the verb for this noun?

- 5 Answer the question with your own opinion.

Do you enjoy visiting zoos? Why / Why not?

VOCABULARY

Conservation

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective forms of the words in the box.

agriculture danger death develop farm
mountain nature poison protect tourist

- Pandas are only found in some _____ regions of south-western China.
- Hikers should wear sturdy boots because there are many _____ snakes in the area.
- Some _____ practices, such as the use of pesticides, are harmful to the environment.
- Several sheep were found _____ after the wolf attacked.
- There has been a massive increase in construction in _____ areas along the coast.
- _____ countries usually have less money for environmental protection than prosperous Western ones.
- Bears are particularly _____ when they are protecting their cubs.
- As wild fish stocks are dwindling rapidly, there is an increasing demand for _____ fish.
- Nowadays, many people prefer to use cosmetics made of _____ ingredients.
- While handling the reptiles, zookeepers have to use _____ clothing.

- 7 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Nowadays there are many

1 _____ (threat) to wildlife.

2 _____ (ecology) all over the world are fighting for the

3 _____ (conserve) of nature and the

4 _____ (protect) of animals.

Some of the main dangers are the massive 5 _____ (destroy) of habitats, aggressive 6 _____ (farm) practices and land 7 _____ (develop) projects.

Moreover, 8 _____ (hunt) continue killing

9 _____ (danger) species for their

10 _____ (value) fur and 11 _____

(responsible) tourists still buy animal souvenirs.

Activists fear that, without sound 12 _____

(environment) policies and strict laws banning the

13 _____ (legal) trade in animals and animal products,

many species will soon become 14 _____ (extinction).

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to animals

- 8 Label the parts of the animals with the words in the box.

beak claw feathers hoof/hooves mane
paw tail trunk tusk whiskers wing



- 9 Complete the animal descriptions with one of the words in the box.

bark bite furry hairy ivory nest purr
scratch spots sting stripes web

- When dogs get excited or angry, they _____.
- When cats are angry, they can _____ you with their claws, but when you stroke them, they _____.
- A spider weaves a _____ between the trees and catches insects in it.
- Many elephants are killed for the _____ of their tusks.
- Children like rabbits because they are soft and _____.
- Tarantulas are large and _____ spiders that live in tropical areas.
- Bees and wasps are insects that can _____ you.
- A mosquito _____ can transmit malaria.
- Birds lay their eggs in a _____.
- A leopard's skin has _____ and a tiger's has _____.

- 10 Match the names for the young animals in the box to the adults.

calf chick cub foal kid kitten lamb puppy

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 horse _____ | 5 wolf _____ |
| 2 goat _____ | 6 cow _____ |
| 3 dog _____ | 7 sheep _____ |
| 4 cat _____ | 8 chicken _____ |

GRAMMAR

Present, past, future & modal passives

- 1 Complete the table with the correct forms of the verbs in the active or passive.

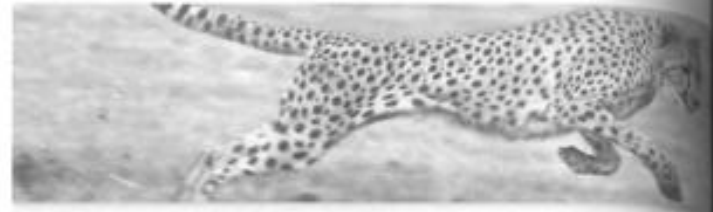
Tense	Active	Passive
Present simple passive (+)	1A They grow oranges in Spain.	1B Oranges _____ in Spain.
Present simple passive (?)	2A Do they grow rice in Spain?	2B _____ rice _____ in Brazil?
Present continuous passive	3A NGOs are holding a conference.	3B A conference _____
Past simple passive	4A Thieves _____ three paintings.	4B Three paintings were stolen.
Past continuous passive	5A Governments _____ measures.	5B Measures were being taken.
Present perfect simple passive	6A The police have arrested the poachers.	6B The poachers _____
Past perfect simple passive	7A Hunters _____ the tigers.	7B The tigers had been shot by hunters.
Future simple passive	8A The authorities will ban whaling.	8B Whaling _____
Modal passive	9A We _____ the killing of animals.	9B The killing of animals can be prevented.

- 2 Look at the table above and answer the questions.

- In 1B, do we know who grows the oranges? **Y/N**
Is it important? **Y/N**
- In 6B, if we want to explain who arrested the poachers, which preposition do we need? _____
- Which verb tenses do not appear in the table?

Can these tenses be used in the passive? **Y/N**

- 3 Circle the correct options and decide if the quiz statements are True (T) or False (F). Then check your answers at the bottom of the page.



Fun facts about animals

- Goldfish that **keep / are kept** in dark places gradually lose their colour. **T/F**
- More people **own / are owned** Labradors than any other breed of dog. **T/F**
- You shouldn't wear blue in the jungle, because mosquitos **will attract / will be attracted to** it twice as much as to any other colour. **T/F**
- Blue whales **can make / can be made** more noise than any other animal. **T/F**
- A group of tigers **knows / is known** as an 'ambush' or 'streak'. **T/F**
- Impalas **have seen / have been seen** jumping ten metres in the air. **T/F**
- A lion **can kill / can be killed** by an ostrich's kick. **T/F**
- Top speeds of around 113 km per hour **have reached / have been reached** by cheetahs. **T/F**
- In the past, Yorkshire terriers **were putting / were put** to work in factories, killing rats. **T/F**
- Male giraffes **fight over / are fought over** females, hitting each other with the neck. This **calls / is called** 'necking'. **T/F**

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- Lots of trees _____ (cut down) by logging companies every day.
- The number of bees in the UK _____ (decrease) steadily.
- Fertilizers and pesticides _____ (harm) more and more species every day.
- Tuna fish _____ (must protect) from overfishing.
- Pandas _____ (become) extremely rare before the government took measures to protect them.
- Although tigers _____ (declare) a protected species many years ago, their numbers _____ (not go up yet).

LISTENING



1 You are going to listen to four people talking about their jobs, which involve working with animals. Before you listen, match these words from the recording to the definitions.

- | | | |
|---------------|---|---|
| 1 shelter | — | A go crazy, out of fear or excitement |
| 2 dosage | — | B TV or film recording session |
| 3 handle | — | C act in accordance with |
| 4 shoot | — | D abandoned, homeless animal |
| 5 comply with | — | E deal with, manage, control |
| 6 dull | — | F boring |
| 7 freak out | — | G give a safe place to live |
| 8 stray | — | H prescribed amount (of a drug or medication) |

2 Listen and match the four speakers to areas A–D they work in.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| Speaker 1 | A Film |
| Speaker 2 | B Government |
| Speaker 3 | C Conservation centre |
| Speaker 4 | D Advertising |

3 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Speaker 1 teaches ...
 - A both experts and members of the general public.
 - B only people who work in zoos.
 - C interested people who come to listen to lectures.
- 2 The students of speaker 1 may have to ...
 - A operate on a wild animal.
 - B capture a wild animal.
 - C observe a wild animal.
- 3 The job of speaker 2 consists mainly of ...
 - A looking after and training animals.
 - B cleaning animals.
 - C travelling with animals.
- 4 The job of speaker 2 is ...
 - A glamorous but dirty.
 - B glamorous but dangerous.
 - C dirty and irregular.

- 5 Speaker 3 works with ...
 - A insects and reptiles.
 - B pets, farm animals and some exotic animals.
 - C farm animals and large, exotic animals.

6 Speaker 3 thinks her work is ...

- A dull but well-paid.
- B hard and boring.
- C badly paid but fun.

7 Speaker 4 regrets that his job ...

- A is unhealthy.
- B involves a lot of administrative work.
- C isn't popular with businesses.

8 Speaker 4 says that his colleagues ...

- A have a variety of qualifications.
- B are mostly lawyers.
- C all have university degrees.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

4 Answer the questions.

- 1 Which animals does speaker 1 work with?

- 2 Name two animal specialists who may attend the courses of speaker 1.

- 3 Which animals does speaker 2 work with?

- 4 Name two things speaker 2 may have to prepare them for.

- 5 Name three animals mentioned by speaker 3.

- 6 Why did the models on the photo shoot freak out?

- 7 Which places does speaker 4 inspect and why?

- 8 Which two degrees does speaker 4 mention?

5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 People assume my work is glamorous, but it's far from it.

- 2 Some of the poor things really freaked out!

- 3 There's a lot of paperwork involved, and many hours spent behind a computer.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and the headings in the article.
Predict how these dogs help people.

Man's best friend

Dogs have been assisting humans for centuries. Read on and find out how.

A Guide dogs

Guide dogs assist blind and visually impaired people in their daily lives. Blind people were using dogs as early as the mid-16th century, though the first training schools for guide dogs were set up in Germany after World War I to help blind war veterans.

Golden Retrievers and Labradors are the most appropriate breeds, due to their intelligence. Other factors taken into account when choosing a guide dog are the respective heights of person and dog, and allergies of the prospective owner.

Guide dogs are essential to their owners' independence as they guide them around obstacles and enable them to move around safely. They stop at kerbs and steps and help their owners cross busy roads, though it's up to the latter to decide when to cross.



B Sledge dogs

These dogs were bred for pulling a sledge and used in cold areas such as Canada, Lapland, Siberia, Finland or Alaska where snow made transportation virtually impossible.

In the late 1800s, during the Gold Rush, dog sledges were used to take supplies to diggers' camps in Alaska. Alaskan Huskies and Malamutes were the favourite breeds for hauling heavy loads, due to their strength and resilience. Another famous use of dog sledges during that time was in the exploration of the North and South Poles.

Nowadays, competitive dog-sledge racing, known as 'mushing', is a sport practised mainly in North America, northern Europe and the Alps.



C Herding dogs

Herding dogs are used to manage sheep. With proper training, they are able to move a flock of sheep and control them with their authoritative presence. On the other hand, poorly trained animals will only make sheep nervous. Herding dogs should not be confused with guardian dogs, which protect the sheep from predators.

One of the most popular breeds is the Border Collie, which originates from the English-Scottish border area. These are lively, obedient and highly intelligent animals, which is why they are also popular as narcotics and bomb detection dogs.

Because of their boundless energy, these clever dogs do not make particularly good pets, unless their owners can spend lots of time with them and keep them busy.



D Sniffer dogs

Sniffer dogs are used in many situations, but are essential in search-and-rescue operations, such as after an earthquake. They have been trained to recognize the smell of living people (rather than dead ones), and can search large areas much more quickly and efficiently than humans or robots.

Selection is tough, because many of the things these dogs are asked to do, such as climbing up ladders, are unnatural for them. Only one in a hundred dogs tested will have the makings of a professional sniffer dog, with Retrievers, Border Collies and German Shepherds topping the charts. The dogs are rewarded with a toy whenever they locate a victim. If they can't find anyone, handlers may have to pretend to be victims to keep up the dogs' morale.



GLOSSARY

kerb	edge of the pavement where the road begins
sledge	vehicle for travelling over snow and ice
dig	make holes in the ground or move soil
boundless	unlimited
have the makings of	have the necessary abilities or qualities to become something

VOCABULARY

Identical verbs & nouns

2 Read the text quickly and check your ideas from exercise 1.

3 Match the questions to parts A–D of the text.

Which dog ...

- 1 has helped make important discoveries? —
- 2 is faster than a machine? —
- 3 is an unsuitable pet? —
- 4 thrives in a harsh climate? —
- 5 can get depressed if unsuccessful? —
- 6 needs to be matched to its owner? —
- 7 has helped soldiers? —
- 8 has seen its role change from work to recreation? —
- 9 needs to be told by its owner when to do certain things? —
- 10 has a role that is sometimes misunderstood? —

4 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Who or what does the word *latter* in part A refer to?
A their owners
B they
C busy roads
- 2 It is said that Labradors make good guide dogs because of ...
A their intelligence and obedience.
B their size, type of coat and cleverness.
C their character and cleverness.
- 3 The article states that, without sledge dogs ...
A People would never have found gold in Alaska.
B Diggers wouldn't have been able to receive provisions in winter.
C Diggers wouldn't have been able to sell their gold.
- 4 What is not said about herding dogs?
A They are able to manipulate and keep a flock of sheep under control.
B They can have both a positive and a negative effect on the sheep.
C They keep the sheep safe from wild animals.
- 5 According to the article, not all dogs can be sniffer dogs because ...
A some of the challenges they face go against their nature.
B they are unable to climb up ladders.
C they don't have a well-developed sense of smell.

5 Answer the questions with your own opinions.

- 1 Which of the dog breeds mentioned would make the best pet for you? Why?

- 2 Which of the dogs mentioned do you think is the most useful? Why?

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in the box. Use the same word twice in each sentence, once as a verb and once as a noun.

ban cost poison present
record research respect work

- 1 The _____ of living has gone up tremendously. Nowadays everything _____ double the price of five years ago.
- 2 When the government first _____ smoking in public places, most people thought the _____ would be impossible to enforce.
- 3 We were _____ with a difficult choice: buy a very expensive _____ or turn up at the party empty-handed.
- 4 _____ and Development is one of the most important departments in our company. Here we _____ all kinds of new uses of technology.
- 5 Most of the Beatles' albums were _____ in this studio – some went on to break all sales _____.
- 6 I believe everybody who fights for human rights deserves our _____, but one of the people I always _____ most was Nelson Mandela.
- 7 There are many people _____ on the project. My own _____ involves testing materials and checking results.
- 8 In the past, many people were _____ with arsenic, which is an extremely effective and deadly _____.

7 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 7.

8 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the multi-part verbs from exercise 7.

- 1 We should _____ the amount of meat we eat. Too much meat is bad for our health.
- 2 If human beings _____ consuming the way we do now, our natural resources will soon run out.
- 3 If we _____ our planet better, we wouldn't have so many environmental problems now.
- 4 Dinosaurs _____ millions of years ago.
- 5 Whole villages _____ by the tsunami.

1 Complete the text with the correct answers.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 A It is estimated | B They are estimated |
| C It estimates | D It said |
| 2 A are knowing | B have known |
| C have been known | D know how |
| 3 A recorded | B have been recorded |
| C have recorded | D have recording |
| 4 A is think | B considering |
| C consider | D is considered |
| 5 A is eating | B are eating |
| C are been eaten | D is eaten |
| 6 A is felt to be | B is felt being |
| C is felt to been | D is feeling |
| 7 A is understanding | B is understood |
| C has understood | D has been understood |
| 8 A can caught | B can catching |
| C can be caught | D can catch |
| 9 A is given | B gives |
| C has given | D were given |
| 10 A must take | B must be taken |
| C must have taken | D must be took |

Tuna fish in danger

Tuna are truly amazing fish. The largest ones can weigh up to 700kg, and yet they move gracefully and quickly.



¹ _____ that some tuna can swim as fast as 50mph, though their average speed is only 10mph. As they are migratory fish, they ² _____ to travel thousands of miles in their lifetime. Some types of tuna ³ _____ diving 250 metres in less than one minute!

Yet, in spite of their prowess, tuna fish are in trouble. The main reason is that tuna ⁴ _____ to be one of the world's most popular fish. Tuna ⁵ _____ by poor people for whom the fish is an essential part of their diet, but also by the rich. No dish of sushi or sashimi ⁶ _____ complete without a few slivers of tuna.

Overfishing ⁷ _____ to be the main culprit. To make matters worse, more and more tuna ⁸ _____ and processed by huge ships, known as floating factories. Moreover, multinationals negotiate unfair deals with poor coastal countries that give them access to the fish. As a rule, no more than 5 per cent of the value of the tuna ⁹ _____ to the developing countries that own the fish stocks.

Environmental organizations claim that urgent action ¹⁰ _____ to save the tuna.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one. Use 2–5 words and the word in brackets.

- People think her husband is very rich. (believed)
Her husband _____ very rich.
- They say that she was a model when she was young. (thought)
She _____ a model when she was young.
- People believe that all Mediterranean people have dark hair. (assumed)
It _____ all Mediterranean people have dark hair.
- They said the President was coming for a visit. (expected)
The President _____ for a visit.
- They say that eating a lot of vegetables is good for your health. (considered)
It _____ eating a lot of vegetables is good for your health.

3 Rewrite the active sentences in two different ways, using the verbs in brackets.

- They think the escaped criminal is living in France. (believe)
It is _____
The escaped _____
- They think up to a thousand people have lost their homes in the storm. (estimate)

- They think the missing racehorse may be dead. (fear)

- They think early treatment is extremely important to cure the disease. (feel)

- They think all scientists are good with technology, but this isn't always the case. (assume)

- They think sloth bears are extremely lazy creatures. (know)

- They believe Chinese sailors arrived on the coast of North America first. (think)

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Read the slide and tick the examples of responsible tourism in examples 1–5.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 A Stay in locally owned hotels. | — | B Stay in international resorts. | — |
| 2 A Travel by car and plane. | — | B Go walking and cycling. | — |
| 3 A Buy lots of tacky souvenirs. | — | B Buy handicrafts. | — |
| 4 A Eat in luxury restaurants. | — | B Taste the local cuisine. | — |
| 5 A Have a quick shower. | — | B Enjoy long, relaxing baths. | — |

Responsible tourism



* **Definition:** tourism that creates better places for people to live in, and better places to visit.

* **Aim:** to reduce the negative impact tourism can have, conserve natural and cultural heritage, share benefits with local communities, teach tourists about local customs, etc.

* **Objective:** to make the experience of tourism more enjoyable and sustainable – both for local people and visitors.

Now match the examples of irresponsible tourism from the exercise above to the problems they can cause below.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------|---|---|
| Water shortages | — | Pollution | — |
| Profits don't go to local people | — / — | Bad working conditions / waste of resources | — |

Write one possible explanation for these other negative effects that tourism can have.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1 Coral reefs are damaged | _____ |
| 2 Forest fires | _____ |
| 3 Birds stop nesting | _____ |
| 4 Seas and lakes are polluted | _____ |
| 5 Monuments deteriorate or are damaged | _____ |

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1 What do these three jobs with animals involve: vermiculturist, snake milker, ostrich babysitter? | _____ |
| 2 Find the names and photos of three types of animal that inhabit the Galápagos National Park. | _____ |
| 3 What is the deadliest animal in the world? | _____ |
| 4 Find the names of six celebrities who are <u>against</u> the fur trade. | _____ |
| 5 Which <u>one</u> of these soups does not have animal parts in it: shark's fin soup, spider leg soup, oxtail soup? | _____ |
| 6 What is the name of the panda that the logo of the World Wildlife Fund for Nature is based on? | _____ |

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What has Gary climbed onto?



INTERACTION

Getting someone's attention

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you are upset by something?
- when you are trying to get people's attention at the beginning of a meeting?
- when you want to apologize for not having any money with you?



- 2 Complete the exchanges between a campaigner and two different people in the street, using expressions in the box. Listen and check.

heard the terrible news completely opposed
ridiculous to trouble you absolutely disagree
a minute of your time strongly That's

Campaigner: Excuse me madam, could I just have
_____?

Woman: If it's money you're after, the answer is no.

Campaigner: No madam, it's nothing like that. I was wondering if you were aware of the plans to extend the airport and build a new runway?

Woman: Extend the airport you say? I'm _____
_____ to that. As it is, we're right in the flight path. If we get any more planes flying over, we won't be able to sleep a wink!

Campaigner: Well, that's exactly what the council is planning to do. They argue it'll improve transport connections and make this city more attractive for people to live in.

Woman: That's _____! If we get any more noise pollution, the value of our homes will go down even further.

Campaigner: If you feel that _____
_____ about it, perhaps you'd like to sign our petition?

Woman: Absolutely! Hand me your pen, young man.

Campaigner: I'm sorry _____
sir, but could I just ask you a question?

Man: All right, but I'm in a bit of a rush.

Campaigner: Have _____
about the airport?

Man: The airport? What about it? Has there been an accident?

Campaigner: Nothing like that sir, but they're planning to build another runway and expand ...

Man: That's great news! I used to work in construction, but with the crisis I got laid off. Anything that'll create jobs is fine by me.

Campaigner: It seems that the council has contracted a foreign firm to do the work.

Man: _____ outrageous!

Campaigner: They claim there aren't enough skilled workers here.

Man: I _____ with that. We have plenty of qualified labour. Pass me that pen and I'll sign straight away.

- 3 Find words or expressions in the exchanges that mean:

- the route that planes take between one airport and another
- lose your job for economic or business reasons
- be unable to sleep
- be in a hurry
- give or pass
- place where planes take off and land

- 4 Which three words in the box cannot be used for strong disapproval? What do these three words mean?

absurd appealing appalling dreadful
ludicrous outrageous ridiculous
scandalous sensible shocking terrific

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 5 Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 80 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Talking about possible situations

- Hope this is helpful. Good luck with your decision!

READING

- 1 Look at the title and read the first paragraph of the article quickly. What is a film extra?

Day in the life of an extra

You don't know me, but you may have seen me. I was that guy sitting at the back of the train when the detectives burst in, the elegant guest at the wedding, the mud-splattered soldier in a trench. I've been all of those, and more, because I earn my living as a film extra. Perhaps I should say as a supporting artist (SA), which is the new, trendy term.

Don't get me wrong – I like my job, but it's far from glamorous. You often have to get up in the middle of the night and travel for hours because, obviously, the film crew wants to take advantage of as many daylight hours as possible.

Once you get to the location, you are shown into 'the bus'. This is where extras wait, hoping someone from the crew will come and pick them for a scene. The more professional extras bring along whole suitcases full of clothes and stuff to help them look right for the shot. A sense of humour, some novels and a tablet loaded with games and crosswords also come in handy to fight the boredom.

In a historical film or a costume drama, things are different. Directors do their utmost to avoid those embarrassing bloopers. So all extras are herded into a wardrobe tent and dressed in appropriate outfits. If it's a war or a disaster film, they may also get covered in bloody wounds and bandages, or generously sprinkled with dust and dirt, none of which is very comfortable. But if you're lucky, you might get sent to the props trailer and come out with an artillery piece or a sword!

Finally, you're called onto the set. You hear the command: Action! This is followed by minutes of frenetic activity then more waiting and standing around, as cameras and lights are adjusted. Then the retakes, which can go on forever.

So why do I do it? For one, it beats sitting in a boring office, plus it's quite well-paid – at least in Britain. You can earn about £75 a day, and more if you've got a special skill, like dancing or fighting. Apparently, in Eastern Europe, extras only charge \$20 and in the USA they're on minimum wages.

- 2 Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

- 1 The main reason why extras have to get up early is that ...
 - A they travel all over the world.
 - B locations are very far away.
 - C camera operators need good light.
 - D filming at night is more glamorous.
- 2 What do we learn about extras in paragraph 3?
 - A Most of them are very funny.
 - B They wait until the director chooses them.
 - C They like playing games and reading.
 - D The experienced ones come to work prepared.
- 3 What do we learn about costumes?
 - A They play an important part in guaranteeing continuity.
 - B They are very uncomfortable.
 - C All extras have to bring their own.
 - D They are not very important in war or disaster films.
- 4 What do we learn about an extra's earnings?
 - A They are similar to the minimum wage.
 - B They are much better in the USA than in other countries.
 - C They are higher if the extra has special abilities.
 - D They are less than what people in an office job earn.
- 5 Which of these statements sums up best how the writer feels about his job?
 - A He does it mainly for the money.
 - B He enjoys it, but he thinks many people have the wrong idea about it.
 - C He says it's glamorous, but not very well-paid.
 - D He says it isn't glamorous, but he likes the money.

WORD ZONE

EXTRA

Film words

- 3 Match the words to the definitions.

- 1 bloopers —
- 2 a shot —
- 3 in focus —
- 4 a take —
- 5 fluff (your) lines —

- A clear, sharp
- B embarrassing mistake in a scene or shot
- C forget your text
- D uninterrupted filming of a scene
- E the way a camera records a scene

VOCABULARY

Idioms which indicate emotions



4 Match explanations 1–8 to the words in bold in idioms A–H.

- 1 part of a shirt, coat, jacket, etc. that goes around the neck
- 2 in a state of depression or melancholy
- 3 so happy you are almost floating
- 4 activity that takes some time and is extremely boring
- 5 very close to vomiting; any further provocation will make you throw up
- 6 part of the hair that is embedded in the skin
- 7 can be a symptom of stress, shock, fear or pain

- A (be/get/wake up) in a **cold sweat**
 B get hot under the **collar**
 C blush to the **roots of** (your) hair
 D (be) **over the moon**
 E **watch paint dry**
 F (be) **sick to the back teeth**
 G (feel/ be) **down in the dumps**

5 Complete the sentences with idioms from exercise 1. Put the verbs in the correct forms and make other changes if necessary.

- 1 Many citizens _____ of the government's excuses – they want solutions now.
- 2 I had a terrible nightmare in which I was chased by monsters and I _____.
- 3 Sam _____ when the teacher praised him – he's really modest.
- 4 I think listening to political speeches is like _____. It makes me fall asleep.
- 5 My dad _____ whenever I bring up the subject of tattoos. He just won't allow me to have one.
- 6 Michele _____ for a while because he can't find a job.
- 7 Beatriz _____ when she saw her excellent exam results.

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Adjectives which indicate emotions

6 Match the adjectives which indicate emotions to the pictures that show these feelings.

ashamed ecstatic enraged envious
 guilty hurt moody proud thoughtful



7 Complete the sentences with adjectives from exercise 6.

- 1 I felt really _____ when I won the award.
- 2 The teacher became _____ when he caught the students copying.
- 3 Pablo felt _____ when his friends reminded him of his bad behaviour at the party.
- 4 My sister is quite _____. She can be happy one minute and bad-tempered the next.
- 5 The young singer felt absolutely _____ when the jury declared her the winner of the talent show.
- 6 I was really _____ when Sylvie didn't invite me to her party. I thought we were friends!
- 7 Lucy is really _____ of her friend Ella's success and good looks.
- 8 Pierre's little brother felt so _____ about breaking the window that he confessed to their mum.
- 9 Lin looked _____ as he sat there considering the possible ways of dealing with the problem.

GRAMMAR

Reported speech: time & location expressions

1 Complete the table with the correct verb forms.

Verb tense	Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple	I work in Madrid.	He said (that) he ¹ _____ in Madrid.
Present continuous	I ² _____ law at university.	She said (that) she was studying law at university.
Past simple	I went to bed late.	He said (that) he ³ _____ to bed late.
Past continuous	I was dancing until 3 o'clock in the morning.	She said (that) she ⁴ _____ until 3 o'clock in the morning.
Present perfect simple	I ⁵ _____ two books.	He said (that) he'd written two books.
Present perfect continuous	I've been writing emails all morning.	She said (that) she ⁶ _____ emails all morning.
Past perfect simple	I'd seen the film before.	He said (that) he ⁷ _____ that film before.
Past perfect continuous	I ⁸ _____ all night.	She said (that) she'd been travelling all night.
will	I'll help you with the project.	He said (that) he ⁹ _____ us with the project.
can	I ¹⁰ _____ lend you some money.	She said (that) she could lend us some money.
must	I must go home.	He said (that) he ¹¹ _____ go home.
should	I should visit my grandmother.	She said (that) she ¹² _____ visit her grandmother.

2 Which two verb tenses do not change?

_____ / _____

3 Which type of verb does not normally change?

4 Rewrite the questions in reported speech.

- Where are you from? He asked (me) _____
- What do you do? She asked (me) _____
- Are you married? She asked (me) _____
- Can I help you? He asked (me) _____

5 Answer the questions about exercise 4.

- What is the correct word order in a reported question?
Subject, verb / Verb, subject
- Do you use auxiliary verbs in a reported question? Y/N
- Which words do you use to report questions without a question word? _____ / _____

6 Rewrite the orders in reported speech.

- Be quiet! (teacher to students)
The teacher told _____
- Don't copy! (teacher to students)
The teacher told _____

7 Put the reported sentences into direct speech. Make the necessary changes to the expressions of time and location.

- Zvonimir said that he had to wear a uniform for that job.

- Ana said that she wouldn't be able to attend the meeting the following day.

- Aaron said that he hadn't seen any films the previous week.

- Sandy said she couldn't meet us there that day.

LISTENING

- 1 You are going to listen to a stuntman talking about his job. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- | | | |
|------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 punch | — | A going after, pursuit |
| 2 multi-storey | — | B a building with many floors |
| 3 chase | — | C important person |
| 4 brawl | — | D support |
| 5 get credit for | — | E hitting with your fist |
| 6 back | — | F receive recognition |
| 7 heavyweight | — | G death |
| 8 fatality | — | H fight |



- 2 Look at the pictures and tick which skills you think a stuntman needs.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| A Language skills | — |
| B Strength | — |
| C Martial arts | — |
| D Falling | — |
| E Flying planes | — |
| F Computer skills | — |

- 3 Can you think of any other skills a stuntman would need?

- 4 Listen and check your answers to exercises 2 and 3.

- 5 Listen again. Complete the summary of the recording with the word(s) that you hear.

- Nowadays, stuntmen are called _____ because there are not only men, but also a lot of _____.
- Stuntmen need to have _____ in order to perform their stunts.
- Apart from the physical preparation, stuntmen have to be _____ to take risks.
- Stuntmen have to be able _____ and they have to learn how _____.
- Many stuntmen are also _____ racing drivers.
- If a stuntman wants to have a lot of work, he should learn how to use _____.

- Early stunts in westerns included the typical fight in a _____.
- A stuntman has to _____ for the star of a movie.
- Stuntmen take all the risks, but don't get any _____.
- Unfortunately, there is no _____ for stunt performers, though they started a campaign in _____.
- Around _____ people are injured while making films every year.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 6 Answer the questions.

- What must stuntmen know how to avoid? _____
- How should stuntmen be physically? Can you remember the three adjectives? _____
- Which martial arts are mentioned? _____
- Which two types of falling are very popular? _____
- Name two things stuntmen have to do with cars. _____
- Name two other sports stuntmen should be able to do. _____
- What happens in a saloon fight? _____
- Which actor likes to do his own stunts? _____
- Which celebrities supported the stuntmen's campaign to get their own Oscar? _____
- Name three common injuries stuntmen regularly sustain. _____

- 7 Write these sentences in your language.

- What does it take to become a stuntman? _____
- Make no mistake – a stuntman is no star. _____
- Stuntmen make sure the stars are safe and sound. _____

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and read the title of the article. Can you identify any of the actors and films? What type of film is Hong Kong famous for?

Made in Hong Kong

For many years, the Hong Kong film industry was the world's third largest, after Bollywood and Hollywood. In the years between 1986 and 1992, Hong Kong churned out hundreds of movies, which earned a record-breaking \$155 million in 1992.

Some of the earliest Hong Kong films were based on Chinese *wuxia* novels, which featured heroic, sword-wielding warriors who often possessed mystical powers. Other popular, post-World War II genres included Mandarin-language musicals and Cantonese-language comedies and operas.

It wasn't until the 1970s that Hong Kong movies achieved global fame, thanks to Bruce Lee – the martial arts specialist and actor who was born in America but raised in Hong Kong. Although Lee only starred in four films before his untimely death at the age of 32, the fourth one, *Enter the Dragon*, became the first American-Hong Kong co-production and grossed around US\$200 million worldwide. Bruce Lee developed his own style (a mixture of traditional *wuxia* with modern elements), and traded in the swords for bare-handed fighting, which is why he is seen as the father of Hong Kong's trademark Kung Fu films.

In the 1980s, Jackie Chan took over where Bruce Lee had left off. Chan's background was in Beijing opera, but he started work as a stuntman. Though his first movies were not very successful, his luck changed when he teamed up with Yuen Woo Ping, a renowned action scene choreographer. Yuen's 1978 directorial debut, *Snake in the Eagle's Shadow*, was also Chan's first hit, introducing his characteristic mixture of slapstick comedy and Kung Fu set in a modern, urban environment.

By the 1990s, the frenetic pace and spectacular fight scenes of Hong Kong films had started attracting the attention of Hollywood directors such as Quentin Tarantino and the Wachowski brothers. The feisty heroine of Tarantino's *Kill Bill* is a superb martial artist who wipes the floor with all her opponents, while the Wachowski's trilogy, *The Matrix*, seems to flow from one breathtaking fight into another. This is not surprising, given that all fight scenes were choreographed by Yuen.

Many talented directors and actors followed Yuen's lead and moved to Hollywood, lured by bigger budgets and greater fame, which led to a talent drain in Hong Kong. Business had not been going well since the mid-1990s, when local gangsters – who had previously limited themselves to demanding bribes – started really hurting the industry through the mass production of pirate videos and DVDs. At home, Hong Kong movies faced increased competition from American imports, while their traditional Asian export markets were being flooded by highly popular South Korean films.

Recently, the Hong Kong film industry seems to have found a new lease of life in collaborations with other industries, particularly those of mainland China and Taiwan. Hong Kong professionals have contributed to the success of box office hits like *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* and *Hero*, both of which go back to the mystic *wuxia* tradition.



GLOSSARY

churn out	produce in big quantities
gross	earn before any (tax) deductions
slapstick	physical type of comedy full of absurd situations and violent actions
bribe	money paid (illegally) to influence someone's conduct
new lease of life	a period when you find new energy and vigor

VOCABULARY

Alternatives to
say and tell

2 Read the text quickly and choose the best summary.

- A The Hong Kong film industry was booming between the mid-1980s and mid-1990s.
- B The Hong Kong film industry has had some influence on Hollywood, but was never of global importance.
- C The Hong Kong film industry became world famous in the 1970s, deteriorated in the mid-1990s and has recently been involved in some new projects.

3 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What do we learn about the Hong Kong film industry in the first paragraph?
- A It used to be bigger than Bollywood and Hollywood.
 - B It used to mass produce lots of movies.
 - C For about seven years it broke all records.
 - D In 1992, it earned more money than Hollywood.

2 What is said about Bruce Lee in paragraph 3?

- A He was born in the USA, but died in Hong Kong.
- B He was born in Hong Kong and died very young.
- C He made 32 films before he died.
- D He was responsible for creating the typical Kung Fu film.

3 What do we learn about Jackie Chan in paragraph 4?

- A He got his breakthrough in 1978.
- B He imitated Bruce Lee.
- C He wasn't a very good stuntman.
- D He used to sing opera.

4 What do *Kill Bill* and *The Matrix* have in common?

- A Both films were made by Hong Kong directors.
- B Both films starred heroines who were martial artists.
- C The same person was in charge of the fight scenes.
- D Both films consist of two parts.

5 Why did the Hong Kong film industry decline?

- A It was a mixture of loss of talent, competition from abroad and copyright problems.
- B The industry was taken over by gangsters.
- C South-Korean films had become much more popular than Hong Kong ones.
- D The Hong Kong film industry could no longer export films to the USA.

6 What has happened to the Hong Kong film industry recently?

- A It has started producing more films again.
- B It has started collaborating more closely with Hollywood.
- C It has returned to its roots.
- D It has successfully participated in producing some hit movies.

4 Match the sentences to an appropriate reporting verb below. Then rewrite them, using the structures indicated.

- 1 I'll tidy my room and do the dishes every day if you let me go to the concert!
- 2 It's your fault we couldn't go away this weekend – you didn't buy the tickets in time.
- 3 I didn't break the window – honestly!
- 4 I'm really sorry I forgot your birthday.
- 5 We've got some great news: we're going to get married.
- 6 Would you like me to help you?
- 7 I'm afraid I won't do any more overtime this month.
- 8 All right, it's true. I told Louise all about you.
- 9 You must let me pay – I really want to.
- 10 Why don't we go and see a play?

- Paul suggested that we should _____
- Danny promised that _____
- Marcella apologized for _____
- Hector insisted that _____
- My brother denied that _____
- My friends blamed me for _____
- Lara admitted that _____
- Eva and Luke announced that _____
- Emilio offered to _____
- Rupert refused to _____

5 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 8.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the multi-part verbs from exercise 5.

- 1 The scriptwriter _____ a brilliant idea for a new comedy series.
- 2 I'm the assistant manager. Whenever my boss is away, I have _____ her.
- 3 When I got back from my holidays I had _____ lots of emails.
- 4 The director's first film received rave reviews, but after that he was never able to _____ the critics' expectations again.
- 5 Tim broke his mother's favourite vase, but he managed to convince her it was the cat. Looks like he _____ it again!

GRAMMAR

Alternative reporting structures

1 Choose the correct answers.

- My dad offered _____ a lift to the airport.
A giving me B to give me C to give to me
- The forest guard warned _____ a fire.
A us not to make B us not make C us not making
- Lars suggested _____ for a drink after class.
A us to go B us going C going
- The company accused _____ leaking confidential information.
A him for B him of C him to
- He threatened _____ to the press if I didn't give him any money.
A to speak B speaking C speak
- She insisted _____ the bill.
A in paying B for paying C on paying
- I want _____ to my party.
A that you come B you coming C you to come
- The travel agent advised _____ the tickets in advance.
A us booking B us to book C to book
- The accused denied _____ at the scene of the crime.
A been B having been C to be
- The police blamed _____ the accident.
A for causing B of causing C him for causing

2 Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one. Use 2–5 words and the word in brackets.

- My brother said that he would phone as soon as possible. (promised)
My brother _____ as soon as possible.
- If I were you, I wouldn't get such a large dog. (advised)
He _____ such a large dog.
- It would be best if you took the early train. (recommended)
He _____ the early train.
- Christie said she was sorry that she had revealed my secret. (apologized)
Christie _____ my secret.
- My uncle said he would pay for our ice creams. (offered)
My uncle _____ for our ice creams.



3 Match the quotes to the famous films they come from.

- Do, or do not. There is no 'try'.
- It takes a great deal of bravery to stand up to your enemies, but a great deal more to stand up to your friends.
- I'm the king of the world!
- Mama always said life was like a box of chocolates. You never know what you're gonna get.
- I'll be back.
- I'm going to make him an offer he can't refuse.
- Oh yes, the past can hurt. But you can either run from it, or learn from it.

- A The Lion King
- B Forrest Gump
- C Titanic
- D Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone
- E The Empire Strikes Back
- F The Terminator
- G The Godfather

4 Rewrite the quotes in reported speech, using verb + to + infinitive, verb + gerund or verb + that structures. Use a different verb from the box each time.

explain warn advise promise recommend
threaten admit announce insist offer

- Yoda _____
- Dumbledore _____
- Jack _____
- Forrest _____
- The terminator _____
- Don Corleone _____
- Rafiki _____

EXTRA CHALLENGE

You have been asked by a director to come up with three ideas for films which appeal to teenagers and young adults. Choose suitable genres in the box and then complete the information with your own ideas.

animation action adventure drama comedy
gangster horror romantic comedy (rom-com)
science fiction (sci-fi) spy western thriller

Which film do you think you and your friends would most like to watch?

IDEA 1

Title: *Never Say Never*

Genre: _____

Main character(s) and actor(s): _____

Plot summary: _____

IDEA 2

Title: *Heart Of Gold*

Genre: _____

Main character(s) and actor(s): _____

Plot summary: _____

IDEA 3

Title: *Aliens Are Human, Too!*

Genre: _____

Main character(s) and actor(s): _____

Plot summary: _____

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 What movie blooper can be seen in the background of a battle scene in the 1995 film *Braveheart*?
- 2 How many people go to see Bollywood movies every day?
- 3 Which country does the director Quentin Tarantino always make reference to in his films?
- 4 Who was the first film actor to play the role of secret agent, James Bond?
- 5 How many hours a day were spent keeping Seneca Crane's beard looking perfect while filming the *The Hunger Games*?
- 6 How many people auditioned for the role of Edward Cullen in the *Twilight* films?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. Do you remember what you do when you stand in for someone?



INTERACTION

Reaching a common consensus

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you want to persuade someone to do something?

- when you want to know if someone has reached a conclusion?

- when you don't feel like doing something?



- 2 Complete the phone conversations between three friends deciding what to do, using words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

you'll love convinced like the sound up to
that Sort Come on the plan in the mood
make a decision Catch fancy

- Tony:** Hi Paula. Are you and Tracey
1 _____ anything this
Saturday?
- Paula:** We are actually. We're going to see that new film
that's on at the Richmond.
- Tony:** Never mind that – you can go to the movies any
time. Mark came up with a much better plan: he
wants the four of us to go and play paintball!
- Paula:** Paintball? I don't really
2 _____ of that. It
sounds sticky and messy.
- Tony:** Don't worry about that, they'll give you protective
clothing. 3 _____, say
yes. It'll be exciting!

- Paula:** I'm not 4 _____ But let
me call Tracey and see what she thinks.
- Tony:** OK. 5 _____ you later.

- Paula:** Hi Tracey. Are you still up for going to the cinema?
- Tracey:** Sure. That was 6 _____
wasn't it?

- Paula:** Tony called. He wants us to come and play
paintball on Saturday.

- Tracey:** I'm not sure if I'm
7 _____ for that. I think
it's a pretty intense game and I'm feeling wiped
out. I prefer something relaxing. What about you?

- Paula:** I'm not 8 _____
bothered either. I'll call Tony and tell him to cancel
Mark.

- Tracey:** Mark? Is he coming too? In that case, count me in.

- Paula:** I didn't know you fancied Mark!

- Tracey:** I don't – he's an idiot. I just
9 _____ covering him in
paint!

- Tony:** So did you two
10 _____?

- Paula:** 11 _____ of. I'm still not
that keen, but Tracey wants to give it a go.

- Tony:** Fantastic. I'm sure
12 _____ it. Mark will be
pleased.

- Paula:** Hmm – I'm sure he will.

- 3 Find words or expressions in the conversations that mean:

- think of an idea or plan

- exhausted

- dirty, untidy

- include someone in a plan

- try something

- be enthusiastic about

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 4 Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 90 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

A story

WRITING SKILL

Words and expressions for giving reasons

- 1 Complete the sentences in two different ways, using the correct forms of the words in brackets.
- 1 Lara lost the race ... (fall)
because _____
because of / due to _____
- 2 The city centre was closed to the traffic ... (demonstration)
because / since / as _____
because of / due to _____
- 2 Read the text and underline all the words and expressions for giving reasons.

The best day of my life

About three months ago my sister ¹ **asked** me to go to the shops for her. She was getting ready to go to a party and had run out of hairspray. At first, ² **I'd said no** because I was doing my homework, but my sister ³ **asked again and again** and finally I ⁴ **said yes**.



When I got to the haircare products I felt a little lost as I never use any of that stuff. That's when a smartly dressed woman pounced on me. I nearly jumped and she ⁵ **said sorry**. Then she ⁶ **said** that she was looking for a young girl with hair like mine to appear in a TV ad. I couldn't believe I had been chosen because of my hair – that bright-red curly mass I never really paid any attention to!

That's why, one week later, I found myself in a TV studio, with lots of people fussing over me and **2 saying** how lovely my hair was. I spent about three hours trying on different outfits and having my hair and face done by the stylists. When I finally saw myself in the mirror, I barely recognized the sophisticated young lady looking back at me!

I had great fun shooting the ad as well, due to the fact that I was surrounded by a group of young dancers, twisting and shaking their hair. At the end of the day, they took me home in a limousine, with a basketful of free beauty products on my lap. It was an amazing experience ... and all because of my sister!

- 3 Read the text again and replace the verbs in bold with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

agree apologise explain insist
persuade refuse remark

- 4 Read the *Writing Reference* on page 120. You have been asked to write a story for the school magazine with the title *The best day of my life*. You could write a true story or invent one about a special party, trip, a competition you won, etc. Follow the instructions.
- 1 Use the story on this page as a model.
 - 2 Divide your work into clear paragraphs, using this plan:
Paragraph 1 – introduce your story.
Paragraphs 2 and 3 – describe what happened.
Paragraph 4 – explain how the day ended and how you felt about it.

Reminder

- Use appropriate structures for giving reasons.
- Use a variety of verbs.

[illegible]

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and the title of the text. Scan the first paragraph and note down the following:

- where and when the jump took place _____
- from what altitude _____
- who jumped _____

The new superman



On 5th May 2013, 48-year-old Russian daredevil Valery Rozov recorded the world's highest base jump when he flung himself off the north face of Mount Everest from an altitude of 7,220 metres. He made his jump clad in a blue wing-suit with bits of red and yellow – newly designed for the occasion – which made

him look like a cross between Superman and Spiderman.

Base jumping is an extreme sport in which participants jump from bridges, tall buildings and towers. The previous Guinness world record for a base jump was held by Glenn Singleman and Heather Swan who jumped from Mount Meru in the Indian Himalayas from a height of 6,604 metres. Rozov's own previous record had been a jump of 6,420 metres.

Rozov started climbing Mount Everest on the Chinese side, from where it took him 4 days to get from his base camp to the jump site. At precisely 2.30 pm local time, 60 years after Edmund Hillary and Tensing Norgay had scaled the top of Everest (8,848 metres), Rozov took his giant leap.

At the moment of the jump, weather conditions were adverse, with temperatures of minus 18 degrees Celsius, which meant the air was very thin. As a result, it took Rozov longer than usual to move from free-fall to flying. Once he managed to stabilize himself, he flew for nearly a minute at a speed of around 200 km/h before landing safely on the Rongbuk glacier at an altitude of 5,950 metres.

With over 10,000 jumps under his belt, Rozov was already a skydiving legend when he started training for his latest, massive challenge. During his career, he repeatedly hit the headlines – for instance in 2009, when he became the first person ever to skydive into an active volcano on the Kamchatka Peninsula in the Russian Far East. In 2012, he successfully completed a 6,420-metre jump from another Himalayan peak, the Shivling (6,543 metres), as a final trial before Everest.

On his return, Rozov admitted that the Everest experience had been extremely challenging, both physically and mentally, and that his jump could easily have gone wrong. In the end, however, it had all been worth it as he was able to make his dream come true.

- 2 Read the text and circle T (true) or F (false). Rewrite the false sentences below to make them true.

- | | |
|---|-----|
| 1 Rozov's suit bore some resemblance to Superman and Spiderman's outfits. | T/F |
| 2 Rozov was also the holder of the previous Guinness record. | T/F |
| 3 Rozov jumped from the top of Mount Everest. | T/F |
| 4 His jump paid homage to the first mountaineers who had reached the top of Everest just over half a century ago. | T/F |
| 5 Due to the low temperatures, Rozov's flight was slower than normal. | T/F |
| 6 Rozov fell / flew over 2,000 metres. | T/F |
| 7 Before his Everest jump, Rozov had never been in the news before. | T/F |
| 8 After his jump, Rozov said he regretted doing it. | T/F |

WORD ZONE
EXTRA

More words which mean 'big' and 'small'

- 3 Find one adjective in paragraph 3 and one in paragraph 5 which mean *very big*.

Paragraph 3 _____

Paragraph 5 _____

- 4 Divide the words below into two groups, meaning *very big* or *very small*.

colossal diminutive enormous
gigantic giant great huge
infinitesimal immense microscopic
minute monumental miniscule
tiny titanic vast

Very big

Very small

VOCABULARY

People associated with sport

5 Match the sportspeople in the box to the definitions.

umpire cox cheerleader ballboy/girl caddie

- 1 This person is the head of a rowing crew and controls the direction of the boat. _____
- 2 This person watches a tennis game to make sure the rules aren't broken. _____
- 3 This person assists a golfer, carrying their clubs and equipment. _____
- 4 This person collects balls in a tennis match when they are out of play and supplies players with them. _____
- 5 This person encourages the crowds at sports events to cheer for – and support their team. _____

6 Replace the words in bold with the correct sportspeople.

- 1 The **mechanic** was called in to look at the driver's leg.
- 2 The **referee** said that the ball was out and gave the point to Nadal.
- 3 The **ballgirls** danced and twirled around the field before the game.
- 4 The **reporter** roared when the striker scored with a minute left to play.
- 5 The **caddie** shouted at her crew to make them row faster.

7 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

- 1 After a rain delay, an _____ (announce) was made that the match would be suspended.
- 2 After the injury, the player needed three months of _____ (physiotherapist).
- 3 It's my job to detect any _____ (mechanic) defects in the engine.
- 4 The _____ (manage) team has decided to invest more money in young players.
- 5 He is a very well-known _____ (comment). Thousands of people listen to him each Saturday.
- 6 Physical _____ (train) is an important part of the preparation of any sports person.
- 7 As a news _____ (report), I have to be up to date with current affairs.
- 8 _____ (coach) is an activity that is used in business as well as in sports. It can help people to understand what their goals are and how to reach them.
- 9 The _____ (refer) sent the player off for deliberately kicking one of the opposition.

WANT TO KNOW MORE?

Words connected to football

8 Complete the text with words in the box.

beat draw dribbling forwards foul free kick
halftime injury midfielders nil penalty pitch
rugby sending... off shoot-out won

In case you didn't know, football is played by two teams of 11 players, who play on a ¹ _____. One of the players is the goalkeeper or goalie, while the others are divided into defenders, ² _____ and strikers, also called ³ _____.

The goalkeeper is allowed to touch the ball with their hands, but only in the ⁴ _____ area they defend. The other ten players have to score by kicking, ⁵ _____ and passing the ball.

A match lasts 90 minutes, with a 15-minute break, called ⁶ _____. The referee can add extra time, known as stoppage or ⁷ _____ time, to make up for delays. Depending on the competition, a match that ends in a ⁸ _____ can be decided by adding 30 minutes extra time, or a penalty ⁹ _____.

The game is controlled by a referee who can give a ¹⁰ _____ or a penalty to a team if an opposition player has touched the ball with their hands or committed a ¹¹ _____ (made excessive physical contact with an opposition player). The referee can book a player for misconduct by giving them a yellow card (a caution), or ¹² _____ them _____ with a red card.

⚡ Football is also known as soccer, especially in the USA, to differentiate it from American football, which is a sport more similar to ¹³ _____.

⚡ The word for zero in football results is ¹⁴ _____.

⚡ If the result of a match is Manchester City 2 – Chelsea 0, it means that Manchester City ¹⁵ _____ the match and ¹⁶ _____ Chelsea.

9 Match the idioms to the definitions.

- 1 This job is out of my league. I haven't got the experience or the skills to do it. _____
- 2 The government is determined to tackle the problem of rising inflation. _____
- 3 We shouldn't let Education become a political football. _____

- A an issue that causes a lot of disagreement
B not having the same quality or level of excellence
C deal with and solve

GRAMMAR

Review (1)

1 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Choose from past simple, past continuous and past perfect.

- He _____ (already compete) in the Olympic games when he _____ (win) his first medal.
- They _____ (fly) across the Andes when the plane suddenly _____ (hit) a mountain.
- I _____ (never hear) of underwater hockey until I _____ (see) that documentary on TV.
- The long jumper _____ (run) to the board, _____ (jump) and _____ (break) the record.
- I _____ (learn) how to play baseball while I _____ (study) in the USA.
- The tournament _____ (take) place in autumn, after the rains _____ (finish).

2 Linda and Laura are preparing to go on an InterRail trip around Europe. Today is Wednesday and they are leaving on Friday. Look at their list of things to do and write sentences about what they have done (✓) or have not (X) done, using the present perfect with *just*, *already* and *yet*.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| * pick up tickets from train station | ✓ (Linda: one hour ago) |
| * borrow sleeping bags from Sue | X |
| * buy toiletries | ✓ (Linda: this morning) |
| * update laptop | ✓ (Laura: yesterday) |
| * buy extra memory card for digital camera | X |
| * send email to hostel in Florence to confirm arrival | ✓ (Laura: ten minutes ago) |

Linda has _____.

They haven't _____.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets, using the first, second or third conditional.

- If you were sensible, you _____ (not go out) the night before an exam.
- The politician may go to prison unless he _____ (pay) his taxes.
- If he _____ (not miss) that penalty, we might have won.
- If I didn't have a membership card, I _____ (not be able) to go to the gym so often.
- She would have gone on to become a famous tennis player if she _____ (not have) that accident.
- You _____ (not get) into trouble so often if you did your homework.

4 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. You can use all narrative tenses, the present perfect and all conditional forms.

I ¹ _____ (just pass) the first exam to become a Pilates teacher. Before I ² _____ (take) my first Pilates class, about a year ago, I ³ _____ (never hear) of it and I ⁴ _____ (not be) into sports either. So, how ⁵ _____ (happen)? How ⁶ _____ I _____ (become) so interested in Pilates?

One day, when I ⁷ _____ (help) my elderly neighbour Lottie in the garden, I ⁸ _____ (notice) that she ⁹ _____ (walk and move) much better than before. I ¹⁰ _____ (ask) her what she ¹¹ _____ (do) and she ¹² _____ (tell) me that she ¹³ _____ (go) to Pilates classes for about six months. Her joints ¹⁴ _____ (feel) much less stiff and she hardly ¹⁵ _____ (have to) take any pills any more. Lottie told me: 'Pilates is great. If you ¹⁶ _____ (exercise) regularly, your body ¹⁷ _____ (respond) in an incredible way. You should try it.' And it was true, the improvement in my neighbour's mobility ¹⁸ _____ (be) amazing. If I ¹⁹ _____ (not see) it with my own eyes, I ²⁰ _____ (not believe) it! I ²¹ _____ (sign up) for some classes the next day and I ²² _____ (love) it. Just think, if I ²³ _____ (not speak) to Lottie, I ²⁴ _____ (not know) about Pilates!

LISTENING



- 1 You are going to listen to five people talking about a great achievement. Before you listen, match the words from the recording to the definitions.

- 1 get up (your) courage
- 2 chore
- 3 work (your) way up the career ladder
- 4 clean up (your) act
- 5 shed
- 6 get stick from
- 7 give it (your) best shot
- 8 underlying

- A be criticized or laughed at
- B improve the way you do things or behave
- C fundamental
- D do something the best way you can
- E lose
- F gradually move to better paid jobs with more responsibility
- G daily or routine task
- H force yourself to be brave

- 2 Listen and match the speakers to the achievements.

- Speaker 1 —
Speaker 2 —
Speaker 3 —
Speaker 4 —
Speaker 5 —

- A obtaining a qualification
- B starting a career
- C making a radical life change
- D giving birth
- E overcoming a fear

- 3 Listen again and match the five speakers to statements A–F. There is one extra letter you do not need to use.

- Speaker 1 —
Speaker 2 —
Speaker 3 —
Speaker 4 —
Speaker 5 —

- A A relative pointed me in the right direction.
- B A specialist made my dream come true.
- C An early success helped me make up my mind.
- D My family were not sympathetic.
- E My friends gave me a lot of support.
- F My doctor gave me a serious warning.

TEST YOUR MEMORY!

- 4 Answer the questions.

- 1 What was speaker 1 afraid of?

- 2 What can speaker 1 do nowadays?

- 3 What was the job of speaker 2?

- 4 What degree has speaker 2 got?

- 5 What health problems did speaker 3 have?

- 6 What did speaker 3 do last Saturday?

- 7 What school did speaker 4 want to get into?

- 8 What is the name of the daughter of speaker 5?

- 5 Write these sentences in your language.

- 1 My family never took my problem seriously.

- 2 I'd always dreamt of going to university.

- 3 I quit smoking, shed 15 kilos and took up running.

READING

- 1 Look at the photos and the title of the text. Answer the questions, then read the text quickly to check.

- 1 Why do you think the people in the photos are in the *Guinness Book of Records*?
- 2 Do you think the *Guinness Book of Records* accepts all types of records? Y / N

Guinness Book of Records

A

In 1951, Sir Hugh Beaver, the director of the Guinness Breweries, was on a hunting trip when an argument broke out over which was the fastest game bird in Europe. When Beaver realized there was no reference book to settle the argument and come up with the right answer, not only to that question, but also to similar, trivial questions that frequently crop up in pub quizzes, the idea for the *Guinness Book of Records* was born.

B

The first collection of record-breaking achievements was compiled by the twin brothers Norris and Ross McWhirter, sports journalists with lots of knowledge of unusual records who had set up an agency to provide facts and figures to newspapers, encyclopedias, etc. It was published in 1955 in London and reached the top of the bestseller lists around Christmas, setting a trend of annual October updates to take advantage of the Christmas sales.

C

Current editions focus on human records in a wide range of activities. There are weightlifting competitors and people who throw eggs or play computer games for days on end. Besides, the book also records unique facts such as the most poisonous plant, the longest running TV series, the tallest person on earth (Sultan Kösen), the youngest person to have done something, etc.

D

Some records are unacceptable for ethical reasons or concerns about the wellbeing of the contestants, both human and animal. Therefore, eating or drinking contests involving fast food, alcoholic beverages or the consumption of harmful items like bicycles or pieces of metal are no longer included. Other records, such as those related to beauty claims are impossible to measure, as they are entirely subjective.



E

Work out what kind of record you want to break. Ask yourself what talents you have, then visit the official website and explain what you want to do. You need to be patient as there are thousands of applicants every week. If they like your idea, they'll send you the rules for establishing or breaking a record. Now is the time to start practising. Once you're confident, ask two witnesses to record your performance. Send in all the evidence of your feat and eventually, you'll get your certificate! If your record is remarkable enough, they'll put it in the book as well.

F

For Ashrita Furman, record-breaking is a way of life. He holds around 160 Guinness world records, including the one for the fastest mile on a kangaroo ball set on the Great Wall of China, and claims to use spirituality and meditation to achieve his goals.

G

With over 130 million sales, the *Guinness Book of Records* is the world's bestselling copyrighted book. It has been translated into more than 25 languages and has inspired numerous spin-off books, TV series and even museums.

GLOSSARY

game bird	bird that is hunted for sport or food
crop up	appear unexpectedly
well-being	general state of being healthy and happy
feat	action that requires a lot of effort, strength and/or courage
spin-off	something new that is created on the basis of an existing thing

VOCABULARY

Abstract nouns
& adjectives

- 2 Read the text again and match the headings to paragraphs A–G. There are two extra headings you do not need to use.

A record breaker in its own right
A surprise hit
What's in it?
How it all came about
Record breaking tips
A famous achiever
A dream come true
How to get in
Will any record do?

- 3 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Beaver wanted a book that ...
A would be useful for hunters.
B could help people win quizzes.
C could solve people's doubts on a range of issues.
D provided lots of data about sports.
- 2 What happens to the *Guinness Book of Records* at Christmas time?
A Many people buy it.
B It is renewed.
C It reaches number one on the list of bestsellers.
D It is discounted in the sales.
- 3 The content of the *Guinness Book of Records* ...
A is a celebration of human triumphs.
B is focused on feats of strength.
C consists of a compilation of strange records.
D is a mixture of unique achievements and facts.
- 4 Records related to beauty ...
A are unethical.
B can be harmful.
C are not always objective.
D can't be verified.
- 5 To get into the *Guinness Book of Records* you need to ...
A establish or break a record.
B apply via the internet.
C set a record that is truly amazing.
D have your performance recorded by witnesses.
- 6 Ashrita Furman ...
A has broken 160 records.
B is a great athlete.
C can jump very high.
D uses interior strength to reach his goals.

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms (singular or plural) of the words in the box. There are two words which you do not need to use.

aimlessness aspiration contentment determination
eagerness energy hope satisfaction

- 1 He has succeeded in business by sheer _____ and hard work.
 - 2 In my opinion, job _____ is far more important than a great salary.
 - 3 My cousin's _____ has caused him to drift from job to job all his life.
 - 4 After three days of searching, rescuers have given up all _____ of finding any more survivors.
 - 5 Ever since he was a young man, he has had political _____.
 - 6 After a troubled adolescence, she found _____ in her marriage.
- 5 What are the verb forms of the nouns in exercise 4?
- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 6 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 7 _____ |
| 4 _____ | 8 _____ |
- 6 Look back at *Verb Zone* in your Student's Book and write down the five multi-part verbs from Unit 9.
- _____
- _____

- 7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 The / scheduled / is / off / at / match / to / kick / 3 o'clock

- 2 He / go / but / rain / the / put / off / him / wanted / out / to

- 3 She / Pilates / improve / fitness / her / taken / 's / up / to

- 4 The / off / after / only / minutes / five / player / sent / was

- 5 If / want / stick / it / you / become / at / sport, / you / to / have to / good / a / at

GRAMMAR

Review (2)

- 1 Complete the sentences in the quiz with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Then do the quiz and check your answers at the bottom of the page.



- 1 Facebook _____ (create) by Mark Zuckerberg in 2003 / 2005 / 2000.
- 2 Since its worldwide introduction, Facebook _____ (ban) from several countries, including Syria, China, and South Korea / Iran / Venezuela.
- 3 The mop _____ (invent) by Spanish inventor Manuel Jalón Corominas in 1923 / 1936 / 1956.
- 4 In the near future, Spanish _____ (speak) by 36 / 25 / 15 million people in the USA alone.
- 5 Tsunamis _____ usually _____ (cause) by earthquakes, but also by volcanic eruptions, landslides, rapid changes in atmospheric pressure or hurricanes / meteorites / floods.
- 6 By the end of December 1998, only 223 / 534 / 151 people _____ (murder) with guns in Canada, compared to 9,300 in the USA.
- 7 The character that _____ (show) in most horror films is Count Dracula / Frankenstein / Godzilla.
- 8 The black and white fur of the Giant Panda _____ (say) to represent yin and yang / day and night / peace and prosperity.
- 9 The tennis Grand Slam _____ (make up) of four tournaments: the US Open, the Australian Open, the French Open and Wimbledon / the Davis Cup / the China Open.
- 10 The 2024 Winter Olympics _____ (hold) in Beijing, Oslo or Almaty / Edinburgh / Vancouver.

- 2 Rewrite the conversations in reported speech.

- 1 Allan: What did you think of the film?
Bill: It was OK, but I'd seen it before.

- 2 Amy: How long have you been studying in Oxford?
Bea: I've been here for two years.

- 3 Adam: When will you get the results?
Brendan: I think I'll get them on Monday.

- 4 Andrew: I really must go – I'm in a hurry.
Barbara: I can give you a lift.

- 3 Read about the mystery and the two explanations. Write P (Plausible) or I (Implausible) after each explanation.

Nazca lines

When archeologists discovered hundreds of pictures of animals and humans drawn in the sands of the Nazca desert in Peru, they were at a loss about how and why they had been made.



- Some investigators are convinced they must be the work of extraterrestrials because they couldn't have been created without somebody directing the work from above. __
- Some investigators believe that the figures may have been drawn to show where the sun and other celestial bodies rose. __

- 4 Write two additional explanations for the Nazca lines, using modal perfects.

- 1 _____
2 _____

EXTRA CHALLENGE

Match the facts to categories A–F.

- 1 The average heart beats 100,000 times a day.
- 2 Persia changed its name to Iran in 1935.
- 3 It is estimated that about 350 million people suffer from Facebook addiction disorder.
- 4 A giraffe cleans its ears with its own tongue.
- 5 Sherlock Holmes appeared for the first time in the novel, *A Study in Scarlet* (1887).
- 6 Some people use patches on their arms to fight their addiction to smoking.

- A history —
- B art and literature —
- C society and culture —
- D science and technology —
- E the human body —
- F the natural world —



Now write questions to obtain the information in the underlined part of sentences 1–6. Try to use a different question word each time.

WEBQUEST

Go online and find the answers to the questions.

- 1 Which football team did Usain Bolt want to play for before he became a world-famous sprinter?
- 2 What is the name of the colourful balls or sticks waved by cheerleaders?
- 3 *Bossaball* is one of the world's wackiest sports. Where was it invented? Which five different sporting elements does it combine?
- 4 What other colours of penalty card can be shown in sports in addition to yellow and red?
- 5 What is the maximum score you can get with one throw in the sport of darts?
- 6 Which swimming idiom means *to be in trouble* or *to have problems*?

GARY & GREG GO GLOBAL

Read the cartoon. What does Greg really think of Gary's attempts to get into the *Guinness Book of Records*?




INTERACTION

Catching up

- 1 Answer the questions. Can you remember how to express yourself?

What do you say ...

- when you want to meet someone again soon?
- when you want to express that someone has changed a lot?
- when you want to ask how someone has been?

- 2  Complete the conversation between Lexi and Marius, two friends who meet again after ten years, with words and expressions in the box. Listen and check.

keep as if up complain as long as landed on Good
Can you believe sounds pretty bet must have been
catch up Neither have deny get together



Lexi: Marius! Great to see you again!

1 _____ it's been ten years?

Marius: No way! Has it really been

2 _____ that? You haven't changed a bit.

Lexi: 3 _____ you. You're still in great shape.

Marius: I have to be – I work as a personal trainer.

Lexi: That 4 _____ interesting. You've always liked doing sports. So, who are your clients?

Marius: I get all sorts, but quite a few are famous – you know, actors, models and so on.

Lexi: That sounds fantastic! I

5 _____ the pay isn't bad either.

Marius: I can't 6 _____. I've set up my own agency, and now I mostly work from home. I've got my own gym, pool, a small office ...

Lexi: Wow – you really? _____ your feet!

Marius: Anyway, enough about me. What about you? What have you been _____ to?

Lexi: Well, you know I always wanted to be an actress. And I did get into drama school.

Marius: 9 _____ for you!

Lexi: But then my mum got seriously ill and I had to give it up. I went home to look after her.

Marius: That 10 _____ really hard.

Lexi: It was. About five years ago, my mum passed away.

Marius: I'm so sorry. It sounds

11 _____ you've had a tough time.

Lexi: Yes, things have been difficult – I can't

12 _____ it. But then, two years ago, I went to an audition for a part in a TV series and they took me on! I've never looked back since.

Marius: We still have so much to

13 _____ on. We must

14 _____ in touch.

Lexi: Yes – let's 15 _____ again soon!

- 3 Find words and expressions in the conversation that mean:

1 to hire or employ someone

2 hard, difficult


3 to die

4 to start your own company

5 very fit

6 Well done!

YOUR TURN TO SPEAK

- 4  Revise the *Express yourself* box on page 100 of the Student's Book. Then listen to the people and respond.

Idioms

101

Review Units 7-9

VOCABULARY

1 Match words 1-10 to definitions A-J.

1 reboot	A say you are sorry
2 ecologist	B extremely small
3 ban	C ask yourself
4 research	D enthusiastic
5 go haywire	E person who applies the rules in a tennis match
6 apologize	F start your computer up again
7 wonder	G person who conserves the environment
8 minute	H investigation
9 umpire	I prohibit
10 eager	J stop working correctly

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

danger destruction die energy
explanation survive threat

- My son is extremely _____; he's always running around doing things and he never gets tired.
- Hundreds of _____ species may have become extinct by the end of this century.
- Thousands of fans around the world expressed their sadness at the _____ of their idol.
- The _____ of the Chilean miners who had been trapped underground for 69 days was nothing less than a miracle.
- Forest fires _____ thousands of hectares of land every summer.

3 Match 1-8 with A-H to make complete sentences.

- I woke up in a cold sweat _____
 - Showing a plane flying over in the film *Troy* _____
 - My brother is over the moon _____
 - My uncle is trying to cut down on sugar _____
 - "If you forget your lines one more time," _____
 - We need to be much more innovative _____
 - I really think you are punching above your weight; _____
 - After more than 40 years at the head of the company, _____
- A my grandfather decided to pass the baton to my father.
B if we want to catch up with our competitors.
C was such a blooper!
D because my parents are going to give him their old car.
E because I dreamed that I'd forgotten to go to an exam!
F you are not experienced enough for such a responsible job.
G because he wants to lose weight.
H "you're out", the director shouted.

GRAMMAR

4 Change the active sentences into passive sentences, and the passive sentences into active sentences. Include the agent if necessary.

- Farmers in the UK are hunting badgers.
Badgers _____
- Poachers have killed many protected animals.
Many protected animals _____
- Do they produce a lot of cars in Germany?
Are _____
- The judge may sentence the criminal to life in prison.
The criminal _____
- The authorities say that thousands of fish have been killed.
Thousands of fish _____
- Are wolves attacking a lot of sheep?
Are a lot of sheep _____

5 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in bold and 2-5 other words.

- My brother said he hadn't used my mobile phone. **denied**
My brother _____ my mobile phone.
- You should take malaria tablets every day. **advised**
The doctor _____ malaria tablets every day.
- I can give you a lift to the airport tomorrow. **following**
He offered to give me a lift to the airport _____
- Stop biting your nails! **told**
My mother _____ biting my nails.
- Why don't we order a take-away? **suggested**
My sister _____ a take-away.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If I _____ (not take) my mobile to the swimming pool, nobody _____ (can steal) it!
- Someone _____ (hack) into my bank account. By the time I _____ (find out), they _____ (already steal) 3,000 Euros.
- The neighbours _____ (must go) on holiday; all the blinds are down and they _____ (not collect) the mail for days.
- If we _____ (leave) a little earlier, we _____ (avoid) the rush hour.
- We _____ (lie) on the beach sunbathing when someone _____ (grab) our bag.

REVIEW CHECK

7 Complete the text with the correct words (A, B, C or D).

The most famous whale in the world

In 1979 Keiko, a young male Orca whale
1 _____ near Iceland and
sold to a local aquarium. He was later
2 _____ to a Canadian
waterpark, where he 3 _____

a performer, and finally to a Mexican
amusement park.

In 1992, Keiko, whose name means 'lucky one' in Japanese, was
discovered by Warner Bros. Studios and 4 _____
the star of the movie *Free Willy*.

The movie 5 _____, which involves a young boy
saving a whale, was a box office hit in theatres worldwide, and
cinemagoers, children in particular, were shocked by Keiko/
Willy's 6 _____ living conditions.

In 1994, the Free Willy Foundation was formed with donations
from the studio and many private contributors. In 1997, the 7 _____

Keiko (3,500 kg) was flown to a specially
built aquarium in Oregon where keepers 8 _____
him well.

After 2002, Keiko lived in a Norwegian fjord where he was free
to come and go. 9 _____ that he could be released
into the wild soon. Unfortunately, on December 12, 2003,
Keiko's death of pneumonia was 10 _____.



- | | | | | |
|----|----------------|----------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 | A captured | B was captured | C was being captured | D had captured |
| 2 | A resold | B catch again | C bought | D selling again |
| 3 | A became into | B was become | C had become | D became |
| 4 | A taken up | B come up with | C turned into | D converted |
| 5 | A plot | B script | C argument | D screenplay |
| 6 | A depressed | B intolerable | C awesome | D anxious |
| 7 | A wide | B tiny | C vast | D colossal |
| 8 | A looked for | B looked after | C cared | D took care for |
| 9 | A It was hoped | B It hoped | C Keiko was hoped | D They hoping |
| 10 | A told | B reported | C claimed | D advised |



Video

Australian wildlife



BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 Read the introduction and the questions in NOW WATCH.

Introduction

Australia has a range of unusual animals that can be seen
nowhere else on earth.

NOW WATCH

2 Answer the questions.

- What reason is given for the uniqueness of Australian wildlife?
- What is a marsupial?
- What is a monotreme?
- What dangerous animals are mentioned?
- What introduced species did you see in the video?

3 Match words and phrases 1–5 from the video with definitions A–E.

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 1 endemic | A animals that feed their young with their own milk |
| 2 get around | B the pocket of skin where marsupials carry their young |
| 3 pouch | C to move from one place to another |
| 4 mammal | D poison produced by some animals |
| 5 venomous | E only existing in a specific location |

FOLLOW UP

4 Go online and find out about Australian wildlife. Write an interesting fact to share with your class.

Did you know that...?

CROSSWORD

Across

- 1 An ... is a song that gets stuck in your head and you can't get rid of it. (7)
- 4 Interviewers often ask about candidates' ... and weaknesses. (9)
- 6 When I fell off my bike, my head hit the ground and I lost ... for a few seconds. (13)
- 7 It's a really uplifting movie and definitely ... watching. (5)
- 9 You should go ... your answers before handing in the exam. (4)
- 10 I still haven't finished my essay and the ... is tomorrow. (8)

Down

- 2 Cockroaches are really ... animals. (9)
- 3 ... (two words) is a problem in many developing countries because qualified people prefer to emigrate and look for better-paid jobs elsewhere. (10)
- 5 Eating a lot of fruit and vegetables will ... your immune system. (5)
- 8 Oh dear, I shouldn't have said that. I think I put my ... in it! (4)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about brain power.
- ☐ I can understand an interview with a neuroscientist about the relationship between music and the brain.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can use expressions and two-part nouns to talk about the brain.
- ☐ I can form and use collocations with *make* and *do*.
- ☐ I can form adjectives ending in *-ed*, *-ing*, *-ful* and *-ive* from verbs.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use modal verbs.
- ☐ I can use gerunds and infinitives.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a radio interview about what makes a good language learner.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand a college interview.
- ☐ I can successfully take part in an interview.
- ☐ I can show polite interest, keep a conversation going and express agreement.

Challenge

- ☐ I can learn and teach a memory-training technique.

Writing

- ☐ I can make formal recommendations.
- ☐ I can write a report.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 *You don't have to shout! The baby is sleeping.*
- 2 *I stopped to watch TV because the programmes are so boring.*
- 3 *I find interviews really stressing.*
- 4 *My French isn't brilliant, but it's enough to get across.*
- 5 *I made my best, but I still failed the exam.*
- 6 *We look forward to see you next week.*
- 7 *If you don't know the word, you can look for it in the dictionary.*
- 8 *We haven't to change trains, it's a direct line.*

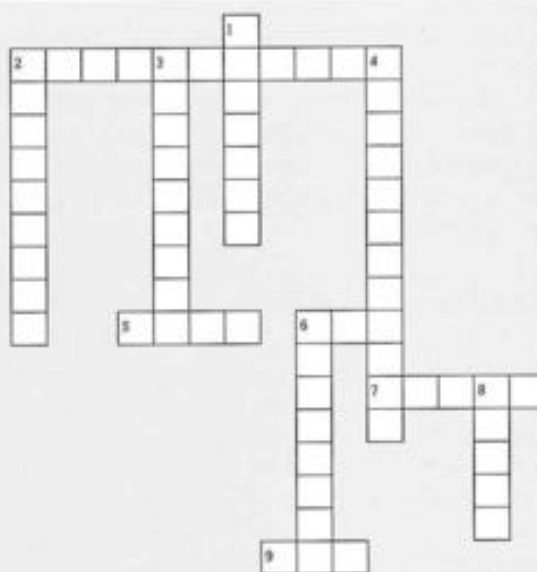
CROSSWORD

Across

- 2 Finishing the marathon has been my greatest ... so far. (11)
 5 What will you do if you ... out of university? You'll never find a job! (4)
 6 The ship set ... on its first voyage in 2010. (3)
 7 The school organized a concert to ... money for a local charity. (5)
 9 I ... you were scared when you saw the tarantula! (3)

Down

- 1 Large parts of the route were flooded, which was a major ... to the expedition. (7)
 2 The food was absolutely ...; I couldn't eat a thing. (9)
 3 The ... with the panther left us completely speechless. (9)
 4 The plane was shaken violently during a fierce ... (12)
 6 Have you ever ... a fear or phobia? (8)
 8 He was ... by a scorpion, which was hiding in his boot. (5)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about a young woman who sailed solo around the world.
☐ I can understand an article about a man who swam the length of the Amazon.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about travel and adventure.
☐ I can create abstract nouns from adjectives and verbs.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use the past simple, past continuous, past perfect and past perfect continuous.
☐ I can use structures like *even though*, *although*, *in spite of* and *despite* to describe contrasting situations.
☐ I can use a range of past tenses to tell a story.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand an interview with a girl who survived a plane crash.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand a discussion about going on a potentially dangerous expedition.
☐ I can argue for and against an extreme proposition.

Challenge

- ☐ I can role play a radio or TV interview with an adventurer.

Writing

- ☐ I can use modifiers.
☐ I can write a film review.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 *The special effects were very amazing.*
 2 *Despite she was terrified after the accident, she never gave up.*
 3 *He had walked for hours when he twisted his ankle.*
 4 *The explorers had to cope many extreme weather conditions.*
 5 *The wide of the river is about two kilometres.*
 6 *She never went to Peru before she joined the expedition.*
 7 *He completed the entire journey by his own.*
 8 *Even though driving carefully, he nearly crashed the car.*

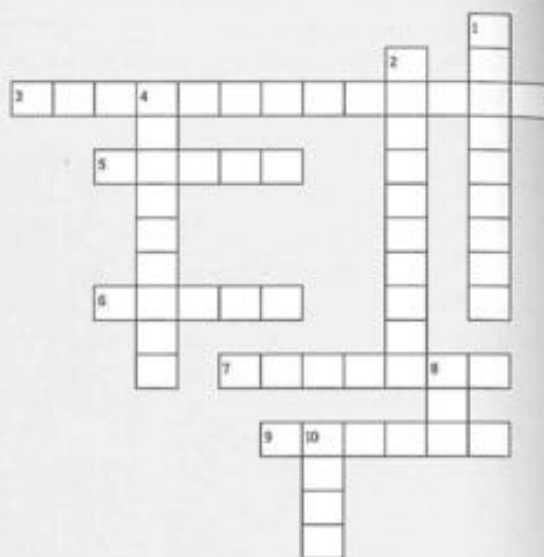
CROSSWORD

Across

- 3 In many countries, the number of poor or ... people has gone up due to the economic crisis. (13)
 5 How could you do such a stupid thing? What on ... were you thinking? (5)
 6 We built a ... to separate our garden from the neighbours'. (5)
 7 Although the UK is ruled by a queen, it is called a ... (7)
 9 The two countries signed a peace ... to put an end to two years of war. (6)

Down

- 1 Last night, government forces finally managed to ... the dictator who had taken control of the country six months before. (9)
 2 Nelson Mandela ... tirelessly against apartheid until it was abolished. (10)
 4 Many NGOs are trying to raise ... of the problem of the increasing numbers of refugees in the world. (9)
 8 After the devastating hurricane, epidemics broke ... in several parts of the country. (3)
 10 Last night, a peaceful protest in the city centre turned into a ... when protesters started burning containers. (4)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about the political changes that took place in Central and Eastern Europe in the 1980s.
☐ I can understand an article about a Hungarian village which was divided by a new border.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about countries and politics.
☐ I can form people words ending in -er, -or, -ant / -ent, -ee, -ist and -an / -ian.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use the present perfect simple and the present perfect continuous.
☐ I can use relative clauses to identify which thing or person I'm referring to.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a discussion about national icons.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand a discussion between students who have to decide which place to visit.
☐ I can talk about the positive and negative aspects of a plan, ask for other people's opinion and make a decision.

Challenge

- ☐ I can plan and conduct a guided tour.

Writing

- ☐ I can use some expressions for giving additional information.
☐ I can write a profile.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 My son has a lot of trouble to do his math homework.
 2 In my country we don't have a democratic regime for long.
 3 That restaurant is owned by a famous cooker.
 4 I missed the bus, that meant I arrived late for the exam.
 5 Violence has broken out in the capital; people have fought for hours.
 6 I've got three sisters, all of who are teachers.
 7 Ours is a medium-sized company; we have about 35 employers.
 8 My uncle was a well-known human rights lawyer, but he is died now.

CROSSWORD

Across

- 4 People who drop ... in the street should be punished. (6)
 5 Governments can use a range of electronic devices to ... on citizens. (3)
 6 In the future, biometric passports will be impossible to ... (5)
 7 As soon as the robber stepped into the bank, he was ... on camera. (8)
 9 Security cameras are everywhere; we'll just have to put up ... them. (4)
 10 Chips are tiny devices on which you can ... lots of data. (5)

Down

- 1 The installation of security cameras ... after the terrorist attacks. (11)
 2 ... can be used to identify people. (12)
 3 It took us ten hours on a hot, crowded bus to get there.
 In short, it was a ... journey. (9)
 8 In the future, it will be possible to ... people's movements because of the clothes they are wearing. (5)
 11 In most countries, owners have to ... their pets for easy identification. (3)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article with arguments for and against surveillance.
☐ I can understand a text about futuristic technology and the ways it is used in the film *Minority Report*.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about surveillance.
☐ I can use collective and partitive nouns.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use *will* for predictions, spontaneous decisions, offers, promises and requests.
☐ I can use conjunctions to link sentences in the future.
☐ I can use the future continuous and the future perfect.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a conversation between a police officer and a tourist about a theft.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand descriptions of people and places.
☐ I can describe people and places using a range of expressions for speculating.

Challenge

- ☐ I can argue in favour of and against a statement.
☐ I can express agreement, disagreement and ask for clarification.

Writing

- ☐ I can give arguments and counter arguments to discuss a statement.
☐ I can write an opinion essay.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 *If they improve security at airports, terrorist attacks will soar.*
- 2 *I can't find my passport anywhere; I'm going off my mind!*
- 3 *Dear Donna, thanks for your email. It was lovely to hear about you.*
- 4 *Their plane arrived early in the morning, so they'll probably lie on the beach now.*
- 5 *Help, help! Someone has theft my bag.*
- 6 *Could I have another bar of bread? I'm still hungry.*
- 7 *On this time next week, I'll have finished my exams.*
- 8 *I think I'll have my own company before I'll be 35.*

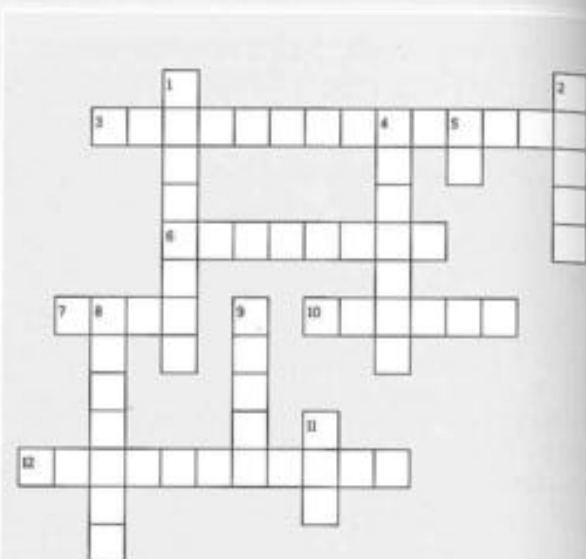
CROSSWORD

Across

- 3 People who have lost part of their face in an accident may benefit from ... surgery. (14)
 6 He cut his hand badly and had to have five ... to close the wound. (8)
 7 I hate it when football fans ... at the players after a disappointing match. (4)
 10 You should think carefully before having a tattoo because you might ... it later. (6)
 12 I couldn't believe how well she looked after the treatment; it was absolutely ... (two words)! (3/8)

Down

- 1 Surgeons use ..., scalpels and other instruments to operate. (8)
 2 At first he couldn't understand why everybody was staring at him, but then the ... dropped: he was wearing his pyjamas! (5)
 4 If his leg doesn't heal soon, he may have to ... an operation. (7)
 5 The ugly duckling had to face up ... the fact that he looked different from the others. (2)
 8 Stories can be an effective way to ... people and make them feel better about themselves. (7)
 9 The part of your head where hair grows is called the (5)
 11 Children who don't ... in with the others are often bullied. (3)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about a man who has had a face transplant.
☐ I can understand a fairy tale.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about medicine and surgery.
☐ I can use expressions with get.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use the second conditional to talk about imaginary or unlikely situations.
☐ I can use the third conditional to talk about hypothetical situations in the past.
☐ I can use *I wish* and *if only* to express regret.
☐ I can use third conditional inversion in formal styles.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand people talking about their tattoos.
☐ I can understand an interview about the history of tattooing.

Interaction

- ☐ I can take part in a debate giving arguments for and against having a tattoo.
☐ I can understand a family disagreement.
☐ I can resolve a family conflict.

Challenge

- ☐ I can retell a traditional story in a new way.

Writing

- ☐ I can use tentative language.
☐ I can write a for and against essay.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 *I wouldn't have cosmetic surgery if I thought it was necessary.*
- 2 *I wish I wouldn't have such big feet!*
- 3 *The prince and the princess got married and they lived happy ever after.*
- 4 *I might consider wrinkle removal if I thought it would make me look better.*
- 5 *Lauren always wears the most outrageous clothes and she loves standing up in a crowd.*
- 6 *If I had born in a different century, I wouldn't have lived in a flat.*
- 7 *When I was younger, I wasted a lot of time, so now I really want to make over for it and study hard.*
- 8 *I still think that politician will win the election; he always has something up his arm.*

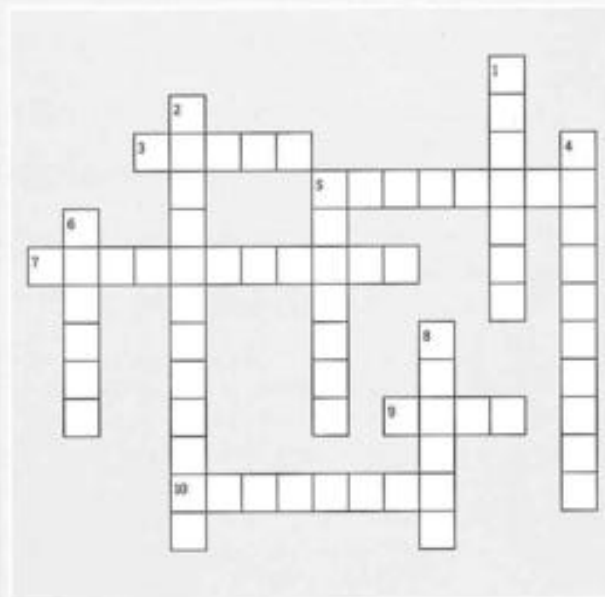
CROSSWORD

Across

- 3 I explained to the telephone company that I hadn't made those calls and I managed to convince them to ... my bill. (5)
- 5 Peter is such a ... He's always talking on his mobile, even when he's with friends. (8)
- 7 At first, my parents didn't want to buy me a smart phone, but in the end they ... agreed. (11)
- 9 Could I speak to Sue, please? ... on, I'll put you through. (4)
- 10 We were able to ... some of the data after our computer crashed. (8)

Down

- 1 She was completely ... when she won the lottery. (7)
- 2 At least a hundred ... (two words) got into the concert for free by climbing over the fences. (4) (8)
- 4 Internet scammers can be extremely ..., so be very careful when they ask you for confidential information online. (10)
- 5 My ... provider doesn't charge me for local calls. (7)
- 6 When interrogated by the police, he ... any involvement in the hacking incident. (6)
- 8 The man who tried to sell us the insurance spoke with a ... American accent. (6)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about a woman whose mobile phone was stolen.
- ☐ I can understand a text about people who became victims of internet fraud.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about internet connection problems.
- ☐ I can form adjectives from nouns ending in -y.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use *could* to ask for permission, make requests and talk about ability and possibility.
- ☐ I can use *be able to* as an alternative form of *can / could* with certain tenses and structures, or with other modal verbs.
- ☐ I can use modal perfects to speculate about the past.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a story about a boy who invited two thousand people to his birthday party.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand people complaining about the cost of using their mobile phones.
- ☐ I can make a complaint and deal with one.

Challenge

- ☐ I can create a TV advert.

Writing

- ☐ I can use expressions for contrasting and opposing ideas.
- ☐ I can write an article for an online magazine.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 He could get a refund when his laptop broke down after just one week.
- 2 I can't believe you were taken back by that scam! It was so obvious that it was all a lie.
- 3 She mustn't have gone home; her car is still parked outside the office.
- 4 I really enjoy be able to listen to music wherever I am.
- 5 You should answer all the questions in the exam and then you would have passed.
- 6 Don't you hate people who talk very loud on their mobile phones in public places?
- 7 Excuse me; I'd like to make a claim about the service. It was very slow and when the food arrived, everything was cold.
- 8 I know I shouldn't have given them my password, but there's no use crying over spilt wine.

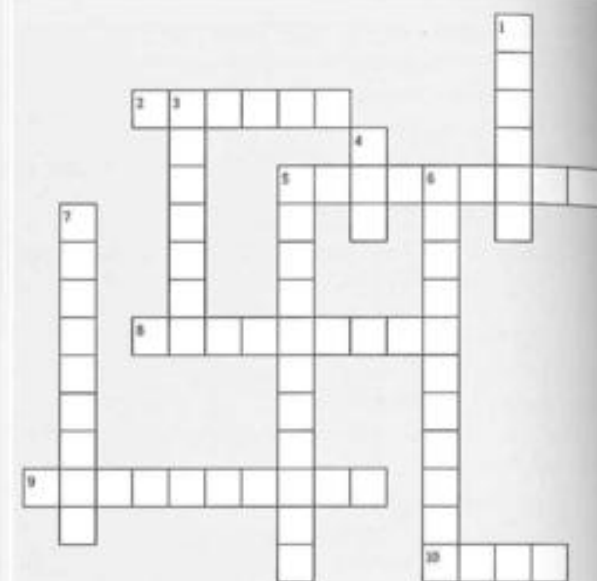
CROSSWORD

Across

- 2 Millions of ... are killed every year for their fins, which are made into soup. (6)
 5 ... are small rodents with bushy tails who normally live in trees. They can be found in many city parks. (9)
 8 ... are flat, triangular fish who have a poisonous barb at the end of their tail. (9)
 9 WWF is one of many organizations dedicated to the protection of ... animals. (10)
 10 The Pyrenean Ibex ... out in the year 2000. (4)

Down

- 1 Although the trade in exotic animals has been restricted or ... in many countries, lots of animals are still bought and sold illegally. (6)
 3 Many species are becoming extinct due to deforestation and other forms of ... destruction. (7)
 4 Leopards have been hunted for many years for their valuable ... (3)
 5 Thousands of baby seals are ... every year for their skins. (11)
 6 We ... the printer after it had been repaired. (11)
 7 The way some people mistreat their pets makes me feel ill; it's absolutely ... (9)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about endangered animals.
☐ I can understand an article about a famous naturalist.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can talk about wildlife conservation.
☐ I can distinguish between identical verbs and nouns and use them correctly.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use present, past, future and modal passives.
☐ I can use advanced passive structures.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand a discussion about the fur trade.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand campaigners trying to get people's attention and telling them about a local development.
☐ I can get people's attention and campaign for a cause.

Challenge

- ☐ I can prepare and give a presentation.

Writing

- ☐ I can use a range of expressions to talk about possible situations.
☐ I can write an informal email to a friend giving them advice.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 A conservator is a person who works to protect animals, plants and natural resources.
 2 Unless action has taken, many animal species will become extinct in the near future.
 3 The Tasmanian tiger was wiped off in the twentieth century.
 4 I would never pay that much for a t-shirt. I think it's a complete rip up!
 5 She is believed to be a model when she was younger.
 6 Thousands of whales are still killing by whalers in countries like Japan, Iceland and Norway.
 7 It isn't a good idea to make an important decision in the spur of the moment.
 8 It says that breaking a mirror brings bad luck.

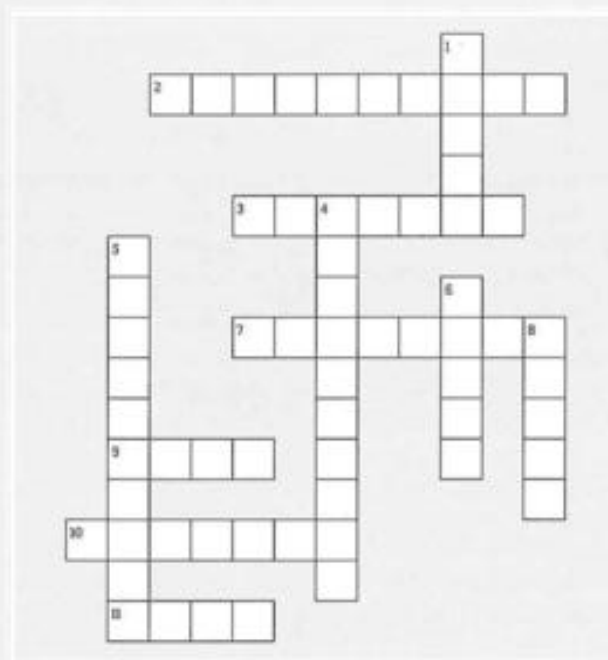
CROSSWORD

Across

- 2 I didn't like the movie that much, but the ... is brilliant. I listen to it all the time. (10)
- 3 Some actors become unbearable when they reach ... I guess being famous isn't as easy as it seems. (7)
- 7 My brother ... the thought of appearing in an action movie; it's what he's always dreamt of. (8)
- 9 The *Titanic* ... after the ship hit an iceberg. (4)
- 10 After the power cut, all the lights and the sound system went ... None of the actors knew what to do. (7)
- 11 I'm coming to the party. I don't want to ... out on all the fun! (4)

Down

- 1 Whatever film he's making, this director always gives a ... part to his favourite actor, even if he only appears for a few minutes. (5)
- 4 The rock star ... for destroying the hotel. (10)
- 5 I don't share my sister's ... for sitcoms. She loves them, but I think they're quite predictable and boring. (10)
- 6 I think he's an absolutely brilliant director. His films are so modern, he's way ... of his time! (5)
- 8 I ... a lot whenever I do exercise, so I always have to bring a change of clothes to the gym. (5)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about movie bloopers.
- ☐ I can understand an article about actors and film directors who often work together.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can use idioms to describe people's emotions.
- ☐ I can use alternative verbs to say and tell.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use reported speech with time and location expressions.
- ☐ I can use alternative reporting structures.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand short extracts from films.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand dialogues in which friends reach a consensus.
- ☐ I can plan a night out and reach a common consensus.

Challenge

- ☐ I can plan a film and act out a scene.

Writing

- ☐ I can use words and expressions for giving reasons.
- ☐ I can write a story.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 *She blushed to the tips of her hair when the teacher complimented her on her work.*
- 2 *He said it had been very cold yesterday.*
- 3 *When questioned by the teacher, the student refused that he had copied in the exam.*
- 4 *My friends had told me it was a brilliant movie, but it didn't really live on to my expectations.*
- 5 *She asked where was the nearest cinema.*
- 6 *He offered lending me the DVD, so I could watch the film again at home.*
- 7 *'Let's go and watch a movie!' 'No, I can't bother; I'd rather stay at home.'*
- 8 *My brother blamed me to crash the computer.*

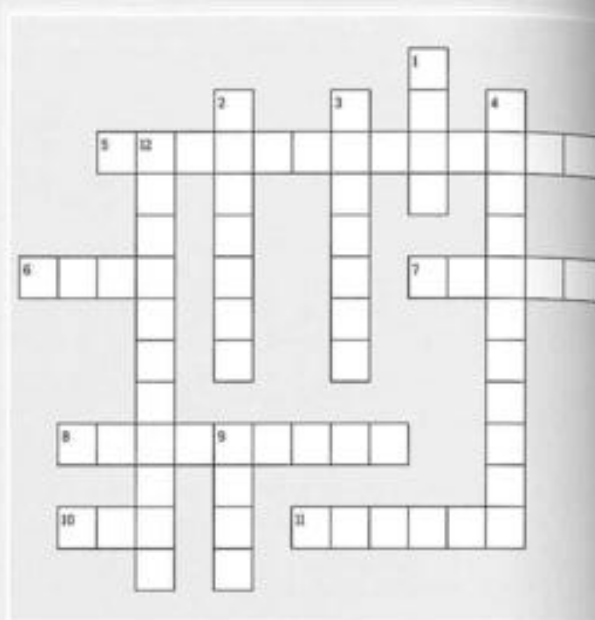
CROSSWORD

Across

- 5 ... develop storylines for films and TV series. (13)
 6 Breaking the world record is a truly amazing ... (4)
 7 Many British athletes achieved Olympic ... at the London 2012 Games. (5)
 8 That's not what we agreed on! You can't just move the ... in the middle of the project. (9)
 10 He had wanted to become a jockey, but a bad fall ... him off. (3)
 11 The man who sits on a high chair and controls a tennis match is called the ... (6)

Down

- 1 The forward scored an ... goal in the last minute of the final. (4)
 2 I don't believe a man can run faster than a horse. Are you ... me? (7)
 3 The soldier was ... a medal for bravery. (7)
 4 The coach praised the ... of his team and said they had played some of their best football. (11)
 9 A ... is a flat rubber disk that is used as a ball in ice hockey. (4)
 12 The game show ... are really brave. I wouldn't want to spend weeks in the jungle. (11)



I CAN...

Reading

- ☐ I can understand an article about Jamaican sprinters.
☐ I can understand a text about three young people's ambitions in life.

Vocabulary

- ☐ I can describe people associated with sport.
☐ I can use abstract nouns and the adjectives related with them.

Grammar

- ☐ I can use narrative tenses, the present perfect and conditionals.
☐ I can use reported speech, passives and modal perfects.

Listening

- ☐ I can understand people talking about different sports.

Interaction

- ☐ I can understand former classmates catching up at a school reunion.
☐ I can meet up with old friends and catch up with what everybody has been doing.

Challenge

- ☐ I can write and present a TV quiz show.

Writing

- ☐ I can use sport-related idioms.
☐ I can write a newspaper article.

ERROR CORRECTION

- 1 I take over my dad; both of us love sport.
 2 My team never won an important tournament until we beat the defending champion.
 3 My brother is a really energetic child; he needs to be doing things all the time.
 4 This is the third time I visit Paris, so I know the city well.
 5 The defender was sent out for insulting the referee.
 6 If I didn't have a season ticket, I wouldn't be able to afford watching all the matches.
 7 Lucy apologized that she was late.
 8 They mustn't have lost the match! The supporters all look really happy.

A report

Class report on ways to improve language learning

[] In paragraph 1, explain what the objective of your report is.

[] In subsequent paragraphs, write your findings; i.e., the information you have obtained. Use a separate paragraph for each topic.

[] In paragraph 3, write about the activities not used by the class.

[] In the final paragraph, you should make some recommendations for future action. Use structures like: *We would like to recommend...; We think it would be an excellent idea to...*

In a report, you should always express your opinions, suggestions and recommendations in an impersonal, formal and polite way.

The aim of this report is to **provide** information about what the students in our class do (and don't do) outside the classroom to practise and improve their English. The report also makes recommendations about what more we could do.

Most of us regularly watch English-language films, although usually with subtitles, and most of us listen to songs in English almost every day. Apart from this, several students **reported** that they often visit English-language websites, and one student said that he occasionally reads out loud and records himself.

However, we were surprised to discover that nobody in the class practises speaking or writing English outside the classroom, apart from homework. It was a shock to realize that we only ever speak English inside the classroom, so this is something we would like to change.

We would very much like to recommend the creation of an English Film Club. Students **would** take it in turns to present a film each week. After watching the film, students would discuss it in English and then collaborate on writing a short review together. We also think it would be an excellent idea to set up a network of pen pals, and **would like to request** that our English teachers support us in this venture.

In a report you should use formal language, e.g. *provide* instead of *give*.

Remember, it isn't always necessary to put the verbs in a reported sentence into the past. In this case, the students continue visiting English-speaking websites in the present.

Use linking words such as *however* to introduce contrasting information.

Use *would* to make your report more formal and polite.

Use verbs like *request* and *support* instead of the more informal *ask for* and *help*.

Tips for writing English

In English, there are different ways of expressing purpose. To answer the question *why* we did something, we can use *to* + infinitive, or *for* + noun, e.g.

I went to the shop to buy some fruit.

I went to the shop for some fruit. NOT: *I went to the shop for buying some fruit.*

I went abroad to study English. NOT: *for studying English.*

In formal writing we can put *in order to*, or *so as to* in front of the infinitive, especially with state verbs, e.g.

I changed jobs (in order / so as) to be close to my family.

To talk about the purpose of an object or an action we normally use *for* + *-ing*. These sentences answer the question *What is it used for?* e.g.

This knife is for cutting vegetables.

Schools are for educating children.

However, if the subject of the sentence is a person, we can also use *to* + infinitive, e.g.

I use this knife to cut vegetables.

A review

Miracoli Accadono Ancora (Miracles Still Happen)



What a disappointing experience! This could have been an excellent film, because it's incredible to think that anyone could actually survive a plane crash like that. The story of a young girl fighting to stay alive in the rain forest, surrounded by wild animals and insects, is absolutely amazing.

But in spite of such promising material, the film was unbelievably awful. The special effects were utterly ridiculous and the plane crash was, quite frankly, a joke. It was like something out of Thunderbirds! As for the music, it was completely inappropriate for the mood of the film. The camera work was terrible too and there were strange flashbacks all the time. The whole thing just looked and felt quite amateur.

And then – after all that – the film ended suddenly. There was no proper ending. I really wanted to know what happened afterwards but I was left totally in the dark.

In fact, the only good feature of the film was the acting. Susan Penhaligon is a superb actor and she gave a great performance as Juliane.

All in all, the film was a huge disappointment. I felt rather let down and I wanted my money back! I wouldn't bother to go and see it if I were you.

William from Weymouth, UK

[] In the first paragraph, introduce the film you are going to review. You can also include some background information, such as the name of the director and the stars.

[] In subsequent paragraphs, write about the things you liked and didn't like about the film.

Modifiers like *quite* soften the meaning of the following adjective.

[] In the final paragraph, say if you would recommend the film. Explain why (not).

Start with a sentence that will catch the readers' attention.

Focus on a few important aspects of the film. Make sure your review doesn't just retell the plot.

Use modifiers in front of adjectives to make them stronger, or less strong. Modifiers like *completely* reinforce the meaning of the following adjective.

In a review, you should give your personal opinion and feelings about the topic reviewed. Unlike a report, a review is not neutral.

Tips for writing English

Adjectives can be divided into gradable and ungradable adjectives. Gradable adjectives can be used in the comparative and superlative form, e.g.

hot, hotter, hottest /

interesting, more interesting, most interesting

Ungradable adjectives are also called extreme adjectives because of their strong meaning, which already includes the idea of 'very'.

Extreme adjectives can't be used in the comparative and superlative form, e.g.

boiling = very hot / fascinating = very interesting

We need to use different modifiers with gradable and extreme adjectives. Extreme adjectives also need extreme adverbs to modify them. Compare:

My boss was very angry. AND My boss was absolutely furious.

I felt rather tired. AND I felt utterly exhausted.

A profile

[] In the first paragraph, introduce the person and briefly say what's special about them.

[] In the second paragraph, talk about their early life. You can include details about their family, upbringing, studies, etc.

[] In subsequent paragraphs, talk about their various achievements: jobs they have held, awards they have won, etc.

[] In the final paragraph, talk about the end of their life, or what they are doing nowadays. Conclude with a sentence, or a quote, which sums up the importance of this person.

Eleanor Roosevelt

[The 20th century person I admire the most is Eleanor Roosevelt because she was such an extraordinary woman for her time and did so much for people who were poor or disadvantaged.]

[In 1905, Eleanor married Franklin D. Roosevelt, **so** when he became President of the United States in 1933, she became the First Lady. Franklin was in a wheelchair, which meant that Eleanor took over many of his duties.]

[**Not only was** Eleanor the longest-serving First Lady of the United States (from 1933 to 1945) but she was also the most controversial and outspoken one. She campaigned tirelessly for racial equality, women's rights, housing reform and child welfare, writing a daily newspaper column **as well as** travelling all over the land to hold press conferences and give lectures.]

[In 1947, two years after Franklin's death, Eleanor became the first chairman of the Commission on Human Rights and helped to draft the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, which is still in force today.]

[She died in 1962, **having received** thirty-five honorary degrees from different universities. At the time of her death, UN Ambassador, Adlai Stevenson said 'The United States, the United Nations, the world, has lost one of its great citizens. She would rather light a candle than curse the darkness, and her glow has warmed the world.']



You can use **so** to indicate that something happened as a consequence of a previous action or event.

Use **Not only ... but also** to add information. Remember to use verb-subject inversion when you start a sentence with **Not only**.

Use **as well as** to add information.

Use participle clauses to make a sentence shorter – **having received** is short for **after she had received**.

Tips for writing English

We use **so** before adjectives, adverbs and quantifiers, e.g.

*It is **so** difficult to learn Chinese!*

*You shouldn't drive **so** quickly.*

*I have **so** much homework that I don't know where to begin.*

We use **such** or **such a(n)** before a noun phrase, e.g.

***Such** naughty behaviour will not be tolerated!*

*My father is **such** an admirable man.*

*It was **such** a lovely idea.*

So is also used as a conjunction meaning *as a result*, *consequently*, or *in order that*, e.g.

*We left home late, **so** we missed the bus.*

*I stood on my toes **so** I could see better.*

An opinion essay

Biometric technology will make the world a safer place. Do you agree?

[] In the first paragraph, introduce the topic and give your opinion on it; are you for or against?

[] In subsequent paragraphs, develop and explain your arguments, giving reasons and examples.

The expression *there is no point (in)* is followed by a gerund.

[] You can start the final paragraph with an opposing argument and explain that you accept it, but disagree with it.

[In recent years, biometric technology has become more and more advanced in many different areas. I totally agree with the use of biometric technology in areas such as payment and ID cards because I think it will dramatically reduce crime.]

[Firstly, I believe that biometric payment cards are far safer than ordinary ones. Only the person whose physical characteristics match their credit or debit card will be able to use it. Therefore, there will be no point stealing people's cards and credit card theft and identity fraud will plummet.]

[Secondly, biometric ID cards will put an end to the practice of false passports. At the moment, anyone can have a passport containing a false identity because you only need a photo of yourself. However, if you need to provide your unique biometric information, you will not be able to receive a false passport. This will be crucial in the fight against people smuggling and will stop criminals escaping to foreign countries.]

[I acknowledge that some people feel uneasy about records of their physical characteristics being held. Nevertheless, I feel that if you haven't done anything wrong, you'll have nothing to fear from biometric technology, and overall it will definitely make the world a safer place.]

Use pronouns like *one, it, them, etc.* to avoid repeating a noun that has already been mentioned.

The plural pronoun *their* is used to refer back to the singular noun *person*; this way we avoid having to write *his or her*.

This refers back to the previous sentence and emphasizes the importance of the information in it.

Use linking words such as *nevertheless* to introduce your counter argument.

End your essay by restating your overall opinion.

Tips for writing English

When we compare things, we use *much / a lot* to talk about a big difference and *a bit / a little* to talk about a small difference, e.g.

Biometric passports are much / a lot harder to fake.

To add variety, we can also use words and expressions like *far, considerably, a great deal*, etc. to indicate a big difference, e.g.

Planes are far / a great deal safer than cars.

To indicate a small difference we can use *slightly*, e.g.
Our neighbourhood is slightly more dangerous now than a few years ago.

A for and against essay

Getting a piercing can be a mistake

In the first paragraph, introduce the topic you are going to discuss.

Body piercing has existed in many cultures for hundreds of years but celebrities like Johnny Depp and Britney Spears have helped to make it very fashionable in recent times. It is possible to have anything and everything pierced, from your ears, nose, eyebrows and tongue to your knees, ankles and toes!

You can use the prepositions from ... to to describe a range of things, e.g. all the possible body parts that can be pierced.

In paragraph two, talk about the advantages, or give arguments in favour, of your topic.

So why have a piercing? Well, some people feel, as they do with a tattoo, that body piercings are a way of expressing their individuality and making a statement. In some cultures, people have body piercings done for spiritual or religious reasons. And, just but not least, many people simply think they're very beautiful and eye-catching.

Starting a paragraph with a question is a good way of involving your readers. Make sure the rest of the paragraph clearly answers the question.

You can use the expression last but not least to add a final argument or person to a list, and explain that they are equally important.

Use linking words such as however to introduce contrasting arguments.

In paragraph three, talk about the disadvantages, or arguments against.

However, body piercing has its risks. First of all, if the instruments are not properly sterilized, there could be a danger of infection and of getting HIV, hepatitis or tetanus. There may also be complications caused by poor-quality jewellery, which can provoke a serious allergic reaction in some people. Added to these potential problems is the fact that it can actually be very painful to have a piercing done.

Use modal verbs like could, may and might to make your opinions more tentative and less definite.

In the final paragraph, conclude with your own idea: are you in favour of or against the topic discussed, or the argument presented?

Society's attitudes to body piercing are still very conservative. Having an obvious piercing might cause people to judge you negatively, just on your appearance. Given all the possible risks and consequences, I believe that young people should think very carefully before having a body piercing done.

Use adjectives like potential and possible to make your opinions more tentative.

In an essay, use formal and fairly neutral language, even when giving your own opinion.

Tips for writing English

We generally use *any, anything, anybody, anyone* and *anywhere* in negative sentences and questions, e.g.

I didn't get anything to eat all day.

Has anybody seen my sister?

We also use *any, anything*, etc. in sentences that clearly have a negative meaning, e.g.

He lost his job and was left without any money.

She refused to say anything to the police.

Finally, we use *any, anything, anybody, anyone* and *anywhere* to indicate that it doesn't matter which, what, who or where.

You can have anything pierced (it doesn't matter which part of your body).

The car was unlocked. Anybody could have stolen it.

An article for an online magazine

Give your article a catchy title.

[] Start by introducing your topic, e.g. mobile phones.

[] In subsequent paragraphs, talk about the negative and positive aspects – or vice versa – of your topic.

You can use *in addition* to add further arguments. Remember not to use it for contrast.

[] End your article with a conclusion in which you give your own opinion of the topic discussed.

Am I a freak?



I'm seventeen years old and I don't have a mobile phone. I had one when I was ten and I never used it. **Even though** my parents have been offering to buy me a new one ever since, I have consistently said 'no thanks'.

Why don't I want one? Because I'm fed up with listening to people using their phones in public places, going on and on in incredibly loud voices about absolutely dull things. **People who do this look stupid and I don't want to look stupid.**

In addition, I get quite annoyed when my friends start checking the internet when we're talking to each other. I think it's very rude. My real friends don't do it anymore because I insist that they don't. As a result, life is great when we're together.

Having said that, I'm aware of all the arguments in favour of mobile phones. My parents always worry when I'm out – they would prefer to be able to call me. Thankfully, they have accepted my position, although they're very reluctant about it. My friends complain that they can't get in touch if I'm going to be late to meet them. I'm never late, so what they really mean is – 'I want to be able to call you when I'm late'!

In spite of all the arguments in favour, I remain firmly opposed to mobile phones. Phone conversations should be private. I love chatting with friends when I'm sitting comfortably, alone in my room.

Debbie

You can use *even though* to introduce contrasting ideas. Remember, *although* is similar to *even though*, but not as strong.

Though the structure of an opinion article is very similar to that of a for/against essay, you can use less formal and more personal language in an article.

Having said that is a shorter way of saying *despite what has just been said* and can also be used to introduce contrasting ideas.

In spite of is used for contrasting opinions and can be followed by a noun, or an *-ing* form. Remember, *despite* is a synonym of *in spite of* and is used in the same way.

Tips for writing English

We can use the expression *on the one hand / on the other hand* to introduce contrasting ideas, e.g.

On the one hand I'd like to earn more money, but on the other hand I don't really want to spend more hours in the office.

We can also use the second part of the expression, *on the other hand*, on its own, e.g.

I love dogs, but on the other hand, my sister is a real cat lover.

Remember NOT to change the first part of the expression, *on the one hand*, in any way!

NOT *in the one hand*, *in one hand*, etc.

Writing Reference Unit 7

An email giving advice

Start your email in an appropriate way. You should start an informal email with *Hi* or *Dear* and the person's first name.

Start the first paragraph by referring to your friend's email, then introduce the topic.

In the second paragraph, write about possible advantages of your friend's plan, in this case, counting penguins.

In the third paragraph, write about possible disadvantages of the plan.

In the fourth paragraph, give your opinion. Make sure you include some good advice and make specific suggestions.

Finish your email with a suitable concluding sentence. Here you can also refer to future contact, e.g. *Let me know what you finally decide to do.*

From: Mel
To: Chris
Subject: RE: penguins!!

Hi Chris,

Thanks for your email. What a surprise! It's typical of you to make a decision on the spur of the moment, but I think you should consider this one very carefully before deciding. Here's what I think.

It would certainly be a wonderful opportunity to visit Antarctica, and that's a place which is not easy – and not cheap! – to get to normally. I imagine you'd have some amazing experiences and see some incredible things. I bet you'd be working with some interesting people too. I think people who volunteer for these kinds of things are often really nice.

But counting penguins? Are you joking? Have you thought about how boring that could be? There are so many of them! And remember how cold it can be in Antarctica. Temperatures can drop below minus 80 degrees. If you didn't like it, it would be very difficult to get away or come back.

My advice would be to find out a lot more about it before you make your final decision. Why don't you contact the organizers to ask for more details? How long would it be for? A couple of months would probably be great. Two years could be challenging! Maybe talk to someone who's been out there? They would be able to tell you what it's like first hand.

I hope this helps. Good luck whatever you decide.

All the best,
Mel

Write a comma (,) after the person's first name.

When you do something on the spur of the moment, you do it spontaneously, without planning it.

Use *would* and *could* to talk about possible, or hypothetical situations.

You can use the expression *I bet + would (or will)* to talk about possible situations.

You can also use the second conditional to talk about hypothetical situations.

Remember *advice* is uncountable; we cannot say *an advice* or *some advices*.

You can use *why don't you...?* to make suggestions.

Use an appropriate ending. Apart from *All the best*, you can also end an informal email with *Best wishes* or *Love*, depending on the relationship between yourself and the person you are writing to.

Tips for writing English

We often use the expression *look forward to* at the end of an email or letter to refer to future contact, or future actions. It can be followed by a noun or an *-ing* form.

I look forward to your next email.

We are looking forward to meeting you next month.

Remember: *to* is a preposition here, so if it is followed by a verb, you have to put the verb in *-ing*.

I look forward to seeing you. NOT I look forward to see you.

We use *look forward to* both in formal and informal writing. We can make the expression less formal by putting it in the continuous form, and by omitting the subject pronoun.

I look forward to your reply. (most formal)

I am looking forward to your reply. (slightly less formal)

Looking forward to your reply. (most informal)

A story

Famous for a day: The day I became a movie star

by Lou Smith

Start your story with a dramatic opening phrase to catch your readers' attention.

[] In the first paragraph, set the scene for the story.

In subsequent paragraphs, develop your story and describe what happened.

You can use the present tense inside a narrative, e.g. to tell the plot of a film, but be consistent; don't mix present and past tenses in the same sentence.

You can use the expression *get to* to explain that you were given the opportunity to do something.

Use a range of past tenses to indicate the order in which events happened. Remember to use the past perfect for events that happened before other ones.

Last month, I was in a Hollywood movie

How did it happen? About two months ago, we were in the middle of a drama class when the head teacher walked in. 'I have just been talking to a film producer,' she announced. 'She asked if she could use the school as a location for her next film.'

We all gasped with surprise and everyone started talking at once. 'Calm down,' said the head. 'They will film a scene here and it requires five 16-year-old girls ...'

She went on to explain that the film was called *Anger*, about a teenage boy who gets into trouble. At one point, the boy's mother visits his school and asks a group of girls if they have seen her son.

We were really pleased that the head offered it to the drama class because there are only five girls who do drama, so we were all in the film. I got to be in a movie because of my decision to take the drama option! And we also discovered that the producer chose our school because she had been a pupil here.

On the day of the filming, we stood nervously together in the playground. The director shouted 'Action!' The mother approached us. 'Have any of you seen Martin Stevens today?' she asked.

This was it, my first-ever line in a film. I looked at her, thought for a moment and delivered my line.

No we haven't.

Use time expressions and suitable past tenses to explain when the story took place.

You can use direct speech to make your story more lively. Remember to use quotation marks ('...').

If your story includes a lot of direct and indirect speech, try to use a variety of verbs as alternatives for *say* and *tell*, e.g. *explain*.

Use *because* + subject + verb to explain the reason for something. You can use *since* and *as* in the same way.

Use *because of* + noun to explain the reason for something. You can use *due to* in the same way.

Give your story an appropriate ending. A short final sentence is more vivid and has more impact than a long one.

Tips for writing English

In a story it is important to use time conjunctions, such as *before* and *after*, to make it clear when and in what order the events happened.

We use *before* with the second action in a sequence, and we use *after* with the first action in a sequence, e.g.

We prepared our backpacks before we left.

After we prepared / had prepared our backpacks, we left.

Not: *We prepared our backpacks and after we left.*

Many stories also use the expressions *in the end* / *at the end*. *In the end* means *finally* and is used to indicate the end of a sequence of events. *At the end* means *at the end of something* and is used for single events.

They walked for hours and hours. In the end, after many adventures, they found their way out of the forest.

They went for a long walk. At the end of their walk they found a nice terrace to have a drink.

An article about an event

In the first paragraph, describe where and when the (sporting) event took place and who was involved.

In subsequent paragraphs, describe what happened and how the situation developed.

In the final paragraph, explain what happened at the end.

Use relative clauses to provide additional information about the protagonist(s) of your story.

Football referee gives parrot a red card

Lola is a parrot who likes football. Her owner Marina Kelly regularly takes her to watch her local amateur football team, Enfield Athletic. Last weekend, Enfield had an important cup tie against local rivals Potters Bar.



With the score 0-0, Enfield striker Jim Gallagher was about to score, but stopped in his tracks when he heard the referee's whistle.

But referee Barry Gordon had not whistled. He told the players to continue playing, but the scoring chance was lost. Two minutes later, the players stopped when they heard the whistle again. When the referee heard someone shout 'Pretty Boy!', he decided enough was enough.

'I was convinced that a woman in the crowd was whistling and shouting, so I told her to stop,' he explained. 'But she claimed that it was her parrot.' Gordon said he had no choice but to send the parrot off. Enfield won the match 5-2 after extra time.

The referee told Ms Kelly that the parrot was banned from all future matches, but the 39-year-old local resident, whose house is a stone's throw from the small Enfield stadium, insisted that she would take no notice of the ban and pulled no punches in her criticism of the referee's decision. 'Banning an innocent parrot is the most stupid thing I have ever heard,' she said. 'Lola loves football and I'll take her to the next match. If they try to stop me entering, I'll stay outside and let Lola fly in and watch it by herself!'

Titles and headlines tend to be short and catchy. You can often omit articles, pronouns or auxiliaries, e.g. *football referee* and not *a football referee*.

You can use idioms, in this case sport idioms, to make your article lively. When you *stop in your tracks*, you suddenly stop what you are doing.

You can use *Ms* both to address married and unmarried women. If you don't know if a woman is married or not, you should always use *Ms*.

Use adjectives to describe the protagonist(s) of your story.

You can use the idiom *pull no punches* – which comes from boxing – to say that you deal with someone or something honestly, without holding anything back.

Tips for writing English

We often use idioms to express things that cannot be expressed as clearly or as vividly with other words, e.g.

Teaching people to respect the environment is an uphill task. (you can easily imagine the effort of climbing up a very steep hill)

All our efforts to save the tiger are no more than a drop in the ocean. (a very small quantity)

We also use idioms as a colourful, more expressive way, of describing people, e.g.

My little brother is all fingers and thumbs. (more expressive than 'my little brother is very clumsy')

My father's extremely down to earth. He always gives me good advice. (more expressive than 'he's very balanced and practical')

Many idioms come from jargon – the specialist, technical language used by a group of people, such as sportspeople. Traditionally, Britain was a nation of seafarers, so many idioms are associated with sailors, e.g.

He is currently working as an apprentice, until he learns the ropes.

Be careful when using idioms; only use them when you are certain of their meaning!

USE OF ENGLISH

Word formation

Look again at page 122 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

For questions 1–8, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

You've got mail

You can't live with them, and you can't live without them. Professionally, it is virtually impossible to (0) *survive* without an email address today. Most companies will issue one to each new (1) _____, while people starting their own business will almost certainly need to use email. After all, without an email address, how could a business (2) _____ with its customers? Outside work too, the majority of people seem to use emails for (3) _____ interaction.

Of course, emails are extremely (4) _____. They allow rapid communication across large distances, which was previously (5) _____ when writing letters. Emails can be cheaper too, because they allow a (6) _____ in stationery and postage costs. However, not everyone is (7) _____ with the increased use of email. Many people hate the feeling that they must (8) _____ check their accounts for something new, only to find spam or something else unwanted.

SURVIVAL

EMPLOY

COMMUNICATION

SOCIETY

BENEFIT


POSSIBLE

REDUCE

SATISFY

CONSTANT

Listen-Speak

 Listen again to the teacher talking in a Science class. The teacher is talking about a Science assignment. Imagine that your classmate was not in class today. Write what you would say to your classmate, explaining what the Science teacher asked the students to do. Be sure to write about the following:

- brain
- Washoe
- first draft

READING

Matching key words and phrases

Look again at page 124 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

You are going to read five school reports written by a class teacher. For questions 1–10, choose from sections (A–E). The sections may be chosen more than once.

A Student: Jill Maxwell

This term, Jill's academic work has improved in many ways. Her work in Mathematics, English and Science classes has usually been of a high quality with the exception of one Biology test, for which she received a surprisingly low score. Jill can be relied on to arrive for class and hand in homework punctually and her attitude towards academic work pleases all her teachers. Alongside this, she seems to interact well with other students and appears to have many friends in the various sports clubs she has joined.

B Student: Khaled Salah

Khaled's academic performance is outstanding and he has obtained very impressive marks for every test this term. He seems to particularly excel in the sciences, with exceptional results achieved in both Biology and Chemistry. However, it would be good if Khaled could contribute more to discussions in class. At present, his shyness seems to hold him back and this could have a negative impact on his academic and social progress. We would like to encourage him to make more friends by joining one of the many sports or activity clubs that are provided after school. Other students enjoy socializing by playing basketball or chess, for example, and this could help Khaled overcome his shyness.

C Student: David Gardner

This term, David's test scores have improved considerably but there is still some way to go before he realizes his potential. He is obviously a very intelligent student and seems to have no trouble making friends. However, we have the impression that he tends to rely too much on his ability to do things adequately at the last minute. David plays for the football, rugby and cricket teams, and these commitments seem to be getting in the way of his studies. We would like to encourage him to turn his attention towards his studies next term and perhaps to drop at least one of his sporting activities.

D Student: Angela Lee

Angela has received excellent results for some of her tests, and although her performance in the History exam was poor she has been working hard to address her weakness in this area. Angela participates very well in group work and has shown the ability to lead others. In discussion-based activities, she contributes well but her written work requires much improvement, particularly in relation to grammar. We will monitor her progress in this area, but a tutor may become necessary for English if improvements are not made within the first few weeks of next term.

E Student: Kiera Samuelson

Kiera's performance this term has disappointed her teachers. She needs to start submitting homework on time, and there is also much room for improvement when it comes to attendance. Although she has only missed two full days, Kiera regularly arrives two or three minutes after classes have begun. To the irritation of her teachers, she often ignores instructions and distracts other students by starting discussions about topics that are irrelevant to the class. On the other hand, Kiera has impressed her basketball coach with her ability to work as part of a team. We hope that she can apply this attitude inside the classroom.

According to the teacher's reports, which student ...

- 1 has received a poor result in a Biology test?
- 2 is often late for class?
- 3 may need a tutor for extra help with English?
- 4 has received excellent results for every test?
- 5 contributes to discussions in class?
- 6 always submits homework on time?
- 7 plays for the school's basketball team?
- 8 has leadership skills?
- 9 focuses too much on sport?
- 10 is too shy?

LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Academic talk

Look again at page 125 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 Listen to a teacher giving a classroom talk. Then answer the questions.

1 What is the main topic of the talk?

- A why the number of CCTV cameras is increasing
- B advantages and drawbacks of CCTV cameras
- C how the police should use CCTV cameras
- D criminals' responses to CCTV cameras

2 Which of the following effects of CCTV cameras does the speaker NOT mention?

- A politicians gain popularity
- B criminals are identified
- C some people feel safer
- D drivers are more careful

3 According to the speaker, having more CCTV cameras could mean

- A criminals can communicate better.
- B the general public don't need to worry about security.
- C criminals could use the information from them to commit more crimes.
- D people are safer.

4 Which of the following statements would the speaker agree with?

- A More CCTV cameras are required in downtown areas.
- B There should be more CCTV cameras in busy suburban neighborhoods.
- C CCTV cameras do not change people's behavior.
- D Spending more money on education could reduce crime levels.

LISTENING

Listening for specific information

Look again at page 126 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

- ▶ You will hear a man talking about a small country called Andorra. For questions 1–10, complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.

Andorra

Andorra is one of Europe's smallest micro-states. It borders France and Spain, and its official language is

(1) _____.

It has two monarchs, who are known as Co-Princes, and a population of approximately

(2) _____.

Andorra is a relatively wealthy country and its major industry is (3) _____.

The country (4) _____ a member of the European Union.

Since (5) _____, Andorra has been a member of the United Nations.

Andorra is famous for

(6) _____, which is among the highest in the world.

Because of the mountainous terrain, there are many (7) _____, which are popular with tourists from around the world.

It is recommended that visitors to Andorra buy

(8) _____.

In 1976, Andorra participated in the

(9) _____.

Andorra has inspired many artists and in 1962,

(10) _____ released a song called 'Andorra'.

READING COMPREHENSION

Academic text: Narrative (Story)

Look again at page 127 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the exam task below.

Read the article and then answer the questions that follow.

- 1 "I don't want to talk about it," Stephen said, when I asked why he had changed his route home from school. We have the same afternoon classes, so I noticed when he started walking home a different way.
- "Oh, OK, but I was just wondering if you'd moved," I replied. "You always used to walk down Maple Street."
- 5 "No, I haven't moved. I just prefer going down Winston Road now," he explained. "It's nicer." But I was **skeptical**. I knew walking home via Winston Road would take him much longer, and it isn't a very pleasant street.
- "I wonder if he's being bullied on Maple Street," I thought to myself. So I decided that I'd investigate. Walking down Maple Street that afternoon, the only unusual thing I noticed was a group of pigeons eating pieces of bread in a front yard. There was an old man watching them from his window. The next day, I asked Stephen, "You're not afraid of pigeons, are you?" The look on his face told me that he was.
- 15 I wanted to laugh, but then I remembered something; I used to be really afraid of spiders. When I was younger, I would run out of the house screaming whenever I saw one, and I wouldn't return until my father had caught it. "You know it's OK if you are. We're all afraid of different things," I said.
- "There's an old man in that house who started to feed them every day, so now they're always there. I just hate the way they move," he replied. "I never know which way they're going. I'm scared they might fly into me."
- 20 "Have you ever been very close to one or fed one?" I asked, remembering that letting a spider walk on my hand was how I had overcome my own fear.
- "No," he said. "That would be horrible!"
- 25 "I think you should. Getting closer to them would make you more comfortable around them," I said.
- It took a lot of persuading, but I managed to get Stephen to come with me down Maple Street the next day. We watched the pigeons for a while, so that he could see how they moved. I saw the old man watching us from his window.
- 30 We went again the next day, and the old man came out. He asked if we'd like to give the pigeons some bread. The man could see Stephen was afraid, so he held out his hand with some bread on it, and a pigeon took it from him. Then I did the same, and gradually Stephen came a little closer, too. The man said, "Look, you try it. Here's some bread."
- 35 Stephen held out his hand with some bread on it, and the pigeon took it from him. He smiled and said, "This isn't so bad after all." He now walks home down Maple Street again, and sometimes he takes some bread with him to feed the pigeons.

1 What would be an appropriate title for this article?

- A Confronting bullies
- B Facing your fears
- C Avoiding pigeons
- D Taking a new route

2 Why did Stephen say, "I don't want to talk about it"?

- A He was rushing home.
- B He didn't know the writer.
- C He was embarrassed.
- D He didn't like the writer.

3 On line 7, what does "skeptical" mean?

- A doubtful
- B impressed
- C surprised
- D pleased


4 Why does the writer mention spiders?

- A because spiders are dangerous, too
- B as an example of his father's actions
- C to show he also had an irrational fear
- D because they are comfortable around humans

LISTENING

Matching multiple statements

Look again at page 128 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 You will hear five short extracts in which people are talking about online shopping. For questions 1–5, choose from the list A–H what each speaker said about online shopping. Use the letters only once. There are three extra statements which you do not need to use.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| A Online shopping allows customers to save money. | Speaker 1 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| B City planners need to respond more quickly to new shopping trends. | Speaker 2 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| C Traditional shop owners are having problems and jobs are being lost. | Speaker 3 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| D Online shopping is creating a less sociable society. | Speaker 4 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| E Hackers make online shopping unsafe. | Speaker 5 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| F Online shopping is increasingly popular. | |
| G Customer reviews are the best thing about online shopping. | |
| H Online shopping is unsuitable for elderly people. | |

Opinion

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are approximately 20 lines visible. The paper appears to be a standard notebook page.

READING

Putting the sentences back into a text

Look again at page 130 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

You are going to read an extract from an article about culture shock. Six sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from the sentences A–G the one which fits each gap (1–6). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use.

Culture shock

Sara Williams describes the stages of culture shock and gives advice on how to solve the problems that people often experience when they move to a culture very different from their own.

Moving to a new country can be exciting, but it can also be very challenging. While all the new sights, sounds, foods and people can stimulate your senses, these new experiences can also cause sensory overload. People moving abroad to work or study or simply travelling for tourism often suffer from culture shock, which, unlike the jet lag they may also feel, is not a condition that usually passes quickly. Having a feeling of disorientation due to the new unfamiliar culture that surrounds them, these people experience severe discomfort within their surroundings and may become deeply homesick.

Culture shock is sometimes divided into four stages.

1 They may initially love learning about the food, people and traditions of their new home. However, this experience soon passes and a period of frustration begins. At this time, differences between their old and new cultures begin to cause anxiety.

The frustration is followed by adjustment to the new culture. **2** Then, the final stage is successful adaptation or mastery, where individuals become able to participate comfortably within their new environment. This is the time when culture shock can be said to truly pass.

People who move abroad to study often experience culture shock. Their academic courses can last up to four years and during this time it is quite natural that they feel disoriented at some point. **3** Although this isolation may feel more comfortable than the outside world, it will prevent them from adapting to their new culture. However, because they are usually relatively young, international students tend to experience less severe culture shock than older people, and social isolation is rare among the young.

Unlike international students, people who move abroad to work may not have a fixed date for return. **4** For

more experienced workers, the technology gap is another factor that can contribute to negative psychological effects. Technologies may be used in different ways in the two cultures, and adapting to a new way of using technologies can be challenging, alongside dealing with the language barrier and new dietary habits.

To deal with culture shock, it is recommended that people work hard to establish a new, fixed routine. **5** Anxiety usually prevents people from enjoying their new culture and making friends, and having a routine can prevent people becoming too anxious.

This new routine should include regular attempts to learn about the new culture, as this will lead to moving more quickly to the mastery stage of culture shock. **6** Although this is the most difficult aspect of culture shock to overcome, without doing this it will be near impossible to adapt successfully to life within new surroundings, as communication is such an essential part of life.

- A In severe cases, students may constantly stay in their room away from other people.
- B This can increase feelings of anxiety and stress.
- C Although this may involve acquiring new habits, such as eating new foods or travelling in new ways, a regular pattern of doing things can create stability.
- D People learn about what is expected in different situations and during this phase they may begin to actively study the language and history of their new culture.
- E However, there will always be some people for whom the experience of culture shock is too great and they are unable to deal with the stresses involved in living or working in a country which is very different from their own.
- F At first, during the honeymoon phase, people see the differences between their old and new cultures in a very positive light.
- G Also, making an effort to learn the local language is essential.

LANGUAGE FORM AND MEANING

Look again at page 131 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

For questions 1–8, read the text and choose the correct letters A, B, C, or D.

1. Around the world, many people are

A known	C understanding
B familiar	D recognize

 with the sport ice hockey.
 2. It is

A a team played sport	C a team sport played
B a sport team played	D a teams sport played

 in many places, especially Northern Europe,
 3. Canada, and the United States. Although ice hockey

A originate	C originally
B origins	D originated

 in Europe, it was first
 4. popularized in Montreal, Canada. The first organized game

A has played on	C was played on
B has played	D was played
- 3 March 1875 in Montreal's Victoria Skating Rink. By 1886, enthusiasts had created the Amateur
5. Hockey Association of Canada,

A which	C there
B where	D that

 organized games all around the country.
 6. Meanwhile,

A it believed that	C it is believed that
B it is that believed	D it is believes that

 the first ice hockey game in the United States
- took place in New England during the late 1890s. Today, teams from both Canada and the U.S. play in
7. the National Hockey League (NHL), which is

A joined	C held
B featured	D composed

 of 23 American teams and
 8. seven Canadian teams. The NHL's

A the most successful team	C team most successful
B most successful team	D the successful team

 is the

Montreal Canadiens; they are also the longest continuously operating team in the world.

USE OF ENGLISH

Choosing the right word

Look again at page 132 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

For questions 1–8, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR EXAMINATION CANDIDATES

After you have (1) _____ an examination room, you are not allowed to talk to other examination candidates. Anyone who is heard speaking will be asked to leave the room, and they may not be able to return to take their exam.

There will be a poster with information that (2) _____ you where you should sit. Before taking your seat, (3) _____ up your coats and jackets on the racks next to the door, and leave your bags beneath them.

Once seated, you cannot open your test paper until the exam invigilator has let you (4) _____ that the test has begun. During the test, although there will be a large clock (5) _____ at the front of the room, you are also permitted to bring your own watch. However, this must be (6) _____ on your table, instead of worn on your wrist. The only other items allowed on your desk are pens, an eraser and

a bottle of water. During the exam, if you have any questions, (7) _____ your hand and the invigilator will come to you.


Special arrangements can be made for certain candidates. If you have any special requirements, such as a computer or a large-print exam paper, you will need to fill (8) _____ a request form at least two weeks prior to the start of your examinations.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 1 A entered | B gone | C walked | D arrived |
| 2 A says | B tells | C speaks | D writes |
| 3 A hang | B put | C attach | D fix |
| 4 A understood | B believe | C realize | D know |
| 5 A visible | B watchable | C detectable | D viewable |
| 6 A stood | B installed | C placed | D planted |
| 7 A raise | B lift | C rise | D hoist |
| 8 A off | B on | C at | D out |

WRITING

Listen-Write

Look again at page 133 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 You will hear a short talk in a Geology class. The teacher is talking about ways to measure temperature. You will hear the talk only once. You may take notes as you listen. You will then be asked a question about the talk. You will have 10 minutes to write your response.

Write a paragraph that explains three different ways to measure temperature. Be sure to include as many details as possible in your answer. Write in complete sentences. When you are finished writing, check your response for grammar, spelling, and punctuation. You have 10 minutes to write your response.

How is temperature measured?

- Instrumental method
- Tropospheric method
- Proxy method

Writing a report

La

La

La

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Academic Listen-Speak

Look again at page 135 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

35 Listen again to the teacher talking in a Science class. The teacher is talking about the panda of central China. Write what you would say about the panda of central China after listening to the talk. Be sure to include as many details as you can about the following topics:

- appearance
- behavior
- life cycle
- panda protection

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Writing an essay

In your English class, you have been talking about how much unhealthy food young people eat. Now, your teacher has asked you to write an essay. Write an essay using all the notes and giving reasons for your point of view.

1. the popularity of fast food
2. the positive effects of a healthy diet
3. (your own idea)

Write your essay in 140–190 words.

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

READING COMPREHENSION

Academic text

Look again at page 137 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

Read the text, and then answer the questions that follow.

For a journalist, writing an obituary is never an easy thing to do, whether it is about a famous person for a national publication or a local person for a smaller number of readers. This form of writing involves many difficult decisions about what to include and what to exclude. Obituaries are primarily news articles that summarize the life of someone who has recently passed away. They are traditionally published in a newspaper the day after someone has died, but nowadays they may appear online within hours of the death.

A journalist who writes an obituary will have a limited number of words to summarize a whole lifetime. They must make decisions in a short time about what information their readers will want and need to know. They must also consider the feelings of the deceased's family, who will be coming to terms with the recent death. Badly written obituaries can cause offense and sadness, upsetting people who have loved the deceased.

When writing the obituary of a famous person, a journalist must include an account of their professional achievements along with details of their home lives. For example, when writing about a famous athlete who has recently died, a journalist cannot just describe the awards they have won. Readers typically want to know what type of person the deceased really was away from the public eye. Balanced obituaries will also include descriptions of any failures that the famous people have experienced as well as their successes.

In the modern world, people expect to receive news instantly. Therefore, many news organizations will prepare obituaries of famous people in advance, before these people actually die. News providers want to be the first to release an obituary, because this allows them to attract more readers and advertisers. However, prematurely releasing obituaries can cause great embarrassment. For example, in 2001, a number of obituaries of the musician Lou Reed were accidentally released following rumors of his death, but he did not in fact die until 2013.

1 What is the passage about?

- A the successful lives of famous people
- B different forms of journalism
- C a particular form of writing
- D an athlete who has died

2 Why do journalists find obituaries difficult to write?

- A Journalists feel sadness when they are writing.
- B They require a large number of words.
- C Information must be summarized quickly and carefully.
- D They will be published in newspapers and online.

3 Which of the following is NOT true of obituaries?

- A They are summaries of positive and negative experiences.
- B They include information about family.
- C They are only written about famous people.
- D They are usually published soon after someone has died.

4 In paragraph 4, what does prematurely mean?

- A too early
- B before others
- C quickly
- D too slowly

SPEAKING

Describing a photograph

Look again at page 138 of your Student's Book. Read *About the exam* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

Choose one of the pairs of photos below and write what you would say about them.

Compare the photographs and say what the people might enjoy about swimming in places like these.



Compare the photographs and say which sport you think is more difficult to learn.



LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Short conversations

Look again at page 139 of your Student's Book. Read *About the test* and the *Tip*. Then do the task below.

 Listen to two students talking. Then answer the questions.

1 Why is the girl's father going to buy the tablet?

- A so she can use it for watching videos
- B so she can do homework on it
- C so she can make music on it
- D so she can use it as a diary

2 Which factor does the boy NOT tell the girl she should think about?

- A the tablet's storage capacity
- B the tablet's color
- C the tablet's size
- D the tablet's manufacturer

3 Which tablet size does the boy probably think the girl should get?

- A 15 inch
- B 10 inch
- C 8 inch
- D 7 inch

4 When is the girl likely to receive the tablet from her father?

- A tomorrow
- B next week
- C next month
- D today

Vocabulary Bank

UNIT 1

bored
boring
confused
confusing
deadline
disturbed
disturbing
effective
exam
fail
get by
go over
information
inspired
inspiring
irritated
irritating
long-term
look up
material
memory
moved
moving
pass
process
recycle
relaxed
relaxing
short-term
strategy
take in

test
think through
uplifted
uplifting

UNIT 2

big
boredom
challenge
cold
collision
cope with
deep
dehydration
desert
dilemma
dry
equipment
exhaustion
experience
exposure
fast
flooding
frostbite
give up
glacier
goal
hard
hot
isolation
journey
jungle

keep up
loud
navigation
ocean
protection
see
set out
setback
smell
storm
strong
sunburn
take on
taste
touch
voyage
weigh
wide
young

UNIT 3

architect
book writer
border
break away
break out
break up
citizen
competitor
consultant
democracy
demonstration

economist
election
employee
employer
European
German
get through
go on
government
guard
independence
kingdom
lawyer
leader
monarchy
musician
parliament
party
pianist
president
prime minister
refugee
regime
republic
resident
revolution
riot
sculptor
state
student
survivor
trainee
trainer

trouble
villager
winner

UNIT 4

bar
biometric information
bit
bunch
capture
closed circuit television
computer chip
detect
drop
flock
group
hear about
hear from
hear of
herd
identify
identity card
iris recognition
listen in on
listen out for
monitor
packet
pair
part
piece
radio frequency identification
scan

scrutinize
slice
speck
spy on
survey
swarm
tribe

UNIT 5

anaesthetic
cosmetic
cure
enlarge
ethical
fit in
get a cup of tea
get a present (for someone)
get a tattoo
get a visa
get an email
get an impression
get bigger
get breakfast
get bullied
get cold
get cosmetic surgery
get facts
get fined
get here
get home
get ill
get locked out

Vocabulary Bank

get nightmares
get tickets
incision
infection
inject
intervention
look like
needle
operating theatre
perform
pin back
procedure
put up with
reconstruct
recover
reduce
remove
replace
reshape
scalpel
scissors
stand out
stitches
surgeon
syringe
take after
treat
undergo

UNIT 6

access
account

be corrupted
be infected (with a virus)
be taken in
buffer
clarity
delete
democracy / democratic
electricity / electric / electrical
family / familiar
freeze
get a signal
hack in / into
history / historical
industry / industrious
library
log on / onto
luxury / luxurious
mystery / mysterious
password
pay off
psychology / psychological
remedy / remedial
set up
software
spam email
supply
sync
technology / technological
tendency
theory / theoretical
top up (a phone)
webcam

UNIT 7

agriculture
attack
ban
carry on
conservation
cost
cut down
danger
death
decrease
destruction
development
die out
ecology
environment
export
extinction
farm
farming
feed
hunt
hunting
import
increase
look after
mountain
object
permit
poison
present
protection

record
research
respect
threat
tourism
trade
use
value
wipe out
work

UNIT 8

admit
advise
agree
announce
apologize
blame
blur
blush to the roots of your hair
catch up with
come up with
confess
confirm
deny
down in the dumps
explain
fluff lines
get away with
get hot under the collar
go haywire

insist
like watching paint dry
line up to
offer
out of focus
over the moon
promise
propose
put a spring in your step
recommend
refuse
sick to the back teeth
stand in for
suggest
wake up in a cold sweat
wonder

UNIT 9

aimlessness
aspiration
ball boy / girl
caddy
cheerleader
coach / trainer
colossal
commentator
contentment
cox
determination
eagerness
energy

enormous
enterprise
fan
giant
gigantic
hope
huge
immense
indifference
kick off
manager
massive
mechanic
microscopic
minuscule
minute
monumental
passion
physiotherapist (physio)
put off
referee
reporter
resourcefulness
satisfaction
send off
stadium announcer
stick at
take up
tiny
umpire

THE BIRTHDAY PRESENT

- 1 Read the story *The Birthday Present* on pages 140-141 of your Student's Book again. Then complete the summary of the story with your own ideas.

This story is set in _____ . The main character is _____ , who _____ .

The narrator _____ .

Most of the action happens _____ .

The characters _____ .

They see _____ .

In the end, _____ .

- 2 Write ten words and expressions from the story that you want to learn. Write a record so that you remember them.

Technotrip

- 1 Read the story *Technotrip* on pages 142-143 of your Student's Book again. Then complete the summary of the story with your own ideas.

The main character of this story is _____ .

At the start of the story, _____ .

He feels _____ because _____ .

Then, he _____ .

Suddenly, _____ .

In the end, _____ .

I thought this story was _____ because _____ .

- 2 Write ten words and expressions from the story that you want to learn. Write a record so that you remember them.

The Challenge

- 1 Read the story *The Challenge* on pages 144-145 of your Student's Book again. Then complete the summary of the story with your own ideas.

The main part of this story is set in _____ .

The main characters go to _____ .

because _____ .

While they are there, _____ .

The final part of the story is set in _____ .

Steven _____ .

I thought this story was _____ because _____ .

- 2 Write ten words and expressions from the story that you want to learn. Write a record so that you remember them.

Workbook

Achievers

B2

Margie Lemmens



Richmond



Achievers

Achievers is an engaging six-level English course matched to the CEFR which aims to motivate and challenge teenage students throughout the language learning process.

With its ambitious vocabulary and grammar syllabus and thorough skills development, **Achievers** prepares students to use and enjoy English at every level, and to succeed in the **Cambridge English: Key, Preliminary, First** and **Advanced** exams and in the **TOEFL Junior®** test.

For the Student

Student's Book

- **Integrated exam training** to prepare students for Cambridge and TOEFL® tests
- Focus on **natural spoken language** and contemporary and idiomatic expressions
- Unique **Challenge lessons** with an ambitious extended speaking task
- **Fast Finisher activities** to keep challenging the strongest students
- **Audiovisual material** to open the door to English-speaking culture worldwide

Workbook

- A page of practice for each Student's Book page
- Key language extended in new vocabulary sections in each unit
- Communication skills reinforcement with listening and speaking activities
- Additional **Audiovisual material** sections
- Downloadable Workbook audio

For the Teacher

Teacher's Book

- Includes all Student's Book pages
- Unit overview for quick lesson plans
- Complete teaching notes, transcripts and answer keys

Teacher's Resource Book

- Tests at two levels for every unit, plus end-of-term and end-of-year tests
- Vocabulary and Grammar worksheets at two levels
- Speaking worksheets for fun communicative activities
- Festivals worksheets

Teacher's Audio Material

Teacher's i-book for smartboards

- A complete digital version of the course with instant access to audio, transcripts and answer keys



Richmond

www.richmondelt.com/achievers

CEF

A1	A2	B1	B2	C1	C2
----	----	----	----	----	----

ISBN: 978-84-668-2954-0



9 788466 829540

